

**SAMGĪTARATNĀKARA**  
**OF**  
**ŚĀRṄGADEVĀ**

**Vol. IV**  
**CHAPTER ON DANCING**

*Translated by*  
**DR. K. KUNJUNNI RAJA**  
**AND**  
**RADHA BURNIER**



**THE ADYAR LIBRARY AND RESEARCH CENTRE**

# THE ADYAR LIBRARY SERIES

VOLUME ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHT

SAMGĪTARATNĀKARA

Vol. IV

*English Translation*

THE SAMGĪTARATNĀKARA  
OF  
ŚĀRNGADEVA

Vol. IV

**CHAPTER ON DANCING**

*Translated by*  
DR. K. KUNJUNNI RAJA  
AND  
RADHA BURNIER



THE ADYAR LIBRARY AND RESEARCH CENTRE





## PREFACE

THE SAṂGĪTARATNĀKARA of Śārṅgadeva is an authoritative work on Indian music and dancing, closely following the *Nāṭyaśāstra* and Abhinavagupta's commentary on it, with some fresh material added. The Adyar Library has published a critical edition of the text with the commentaries of Kallinātha and Siṃha-bhūpāla, in four volumes. An English translation was also planned, of which the first volume containing the first chapter on music, translated by Professor C. Kunhan Raja, was published in 1945 as No. 51 of the Adyar Library Series. The translation of the fourth volume, containing the seventh chapter of the text on dancing, published in volume 23, parts 3-4, of *The Adyar Library Bulletin* is now being issued as a book in the Adyar Library Series. The translation of the remaining volumes will be published in due course.

The present translation is the result of the collaboration of a team of workers. The late Pandit S. Subrahmanya Sastri who edited the text had made a translation of the first 498 out of the 1670 verses of this chapter. This was revised and the further portion translated by Dr. K. Kunjunn Raja and Mrs. Radha Burnier. The aim has been to bring out clearly the

ideas contained in the text in readable English rather than to make a strictly literal, word for word translation.

Nearly forty verses in the introductory portion of this chapter are the same as the introductory verses found in the *Abhinayadarpaṇa* ascribed to the legendary sage Nandikeśvara. On the basis of this M. Alain Danielou suggested in his foreword to the Sanskrit text (published in the Adyar Library Series, No. 86) that Śārṅgadeva might have borrowed these verses from Nandikeśvara's text 'since there seems no reason to doubt the antiquity of the *Abhinayadarpaṇa*.'

It may be pointed out here that though Nandikeśvara is mentioned as an ancient authority on music and dancing even in Abhinavagupta's commentary on the *Nāṭyaśāstra* (Rājaśekhara says in the beginning of the *Kāvya-mīmāṃsā* that Nandikeśvara is the founder of the Rasa school; and Śārṅgadeva himself refers to Nandikeśvara as an ancient authority), there is no reference to his *Abhinayadarpaṇa* in any work prior to Śārṅgadeva. Even Abhinavagupta who refers to the views of Nandikeśvara on music does not refer to this work; in one place he says that he is summarizing the views of Nandikeśvara on the authority of Kīrtidhara, though he has actually seen no work of his. (*yaḥ kīrtidharaṇa nandikeśvaramatam atrāgamitvena darśitam tadas-mābhiḥ sākṣaṇ na dr̥ṣṭam tatpratyayāt tu likhyate saṃkṣepataḥ*, end of ch. 29)

The *Abhinayadarpaṇa* is obviously a text later than the *Nāṭyaśāstra* and Abhinavagupta, and cannot be by the legendary sage Nandikeśvara. The compiler

of the text clearly states that he is only collecting the teachings of earlier authorities (*etāni pūrvaśāstrānusāreṇoktāni vai mayā*, verse 47). M. Danielou himself has referred to such borrowings in the *Samgītasaroddhāra*, the *Rasakaumudī*, the *Abhinavabhāratasārasaṃgraha*, etc. It is probable that the *Abhinayadarpaṇa* is a similar later manual ascribed to the legendary Nandikeśvara to give it the stamp of authority.

Śārṅgadeva lived about the middle of the 13th century under the patronage of the Yādava king Singhaṇa (A.D. 1210-47). King Siṃhabhūpāla, author of the *Sudhākara* commentary came soon after, in the beginning of the 14th century (A.D. 1330). He, as well as Kallinātha, author of the *Kālānidhī* commentary, takes the introductory verses of the chapter on dancing as the genuine text of Śārṅgadeva himself. Hence there is no reason to believe that Śārṅgadeva is the borrower; his indebtedness is only to the *Nāṭyaśāstra* and Abhinava's commentary on it.

The highly honoured place occupied by Śārṅgadeva not only in the field of musicology but also in literary criticism is evident from the fact that Jagannātha Paṇḍita, author of the *Rasagaṅgādhara*, refers to his views and quotes his verses as authority while discussing problems connected with Rasa realization. Śārṅgadeva generally follows Abhinavagupta, but in many places he states his views in clear and definite terms. Some of the statements may be noted here.

(a) The so called *sthāyibhāva-s* like love, grief and fear can also be fleeting feelings (*saṃcāribhāva-s*

when they are not fully developed by describing the *vibhāva-s* and *anubhāva-s* adequately. This view is suggested from Bharata's prohibition of *jugupsā* as a *vyabhicārin* for *śrṅgāra*. (*Nāṭyaśāstra*, GOS ed. I, p. 307); Abhinavagupta also accepts this (*sthāyinastu vyabhicāriṇo-  
'pi bhavanti*, p. 270).

(b) The bliss of Rasa is only comparable to the bliss of enjoying Brahman, and not identical.

(c) The actor does not enjoy Rasa; it is the spectators who enjoy it (*na rasaṃ svādate nāṭaḥ*).

(d) The analogy of the vessel (*pātra*, a vessel, a character) and the soup or essence (*rasa*) suggests that the spectators enjoy the Rasa (as existing in the characters) through the actor who is only the medium.

(e) *Śānta* may be accepted as an independent Rasa since it has its own *vibhāva-s*, *anubhāva-s* and *sthāyibhāva*. Śārṅgadeva takes Nirveda as its *sthāyibhāva*.

(f) *Bhakti* (devotion) and *sneha* (affection) are only varieties of *rati* or love, and may be considered as *vyabhicārin-s*; it becomes *sthāyin* when it is between a man and a woman, and then leads to *śrṅgāra* Rasa.

As Dr. Kunhan Raja has pointed out in his introduction to the first volume, the art has undergone changes during the course of the centuries and hence we find obscurities in the text which are difficult to clarify. We have, however, consulted the commentaries of Kallinātha and Siṅhabhūpāla and also the *Nāṭyaśāstra* and Abhinavagupta's commentary on it to try to arrive at the correct readings and meaning.

Wherever the corrupt readings in the commentaries gave rise to new problems, we consulted the manuscripts in the library. Important corrections of the text are given as footnotes. Where there are alternative readings, the translations of such readings are also given as footnotes.

The index appended to the translation is not an exhaustive one and refers only to the definitions of technical terms and not to all the pages where they occur. As alternative names and synonyms are used for a number of terms, these have also been included in the index.

We offer our thanks to H. H. The Maharaja of Bikaner for kindly lending manuscripts of the commentaries of Kallinātha and Siṃhabhūpāla from the Anup Sanskrit Library, which have been helpful in our work. Our thanks are also due to Mrs. Seetha Neelakantan, Librarian, Adyar Library, for preparing the index and reading the proofs.

## CONTENTS

	PAGE
PREFACE ..	v
TRADITIONAL ORIGIN ..	1
AṄGA-S ..	7
<i>Head</i> , p. 7; <i>Hands</i> , p. 11; <i>Single Hand Poses</i> , p. 14; <i>Combined Hand Poses</i> , p. 25; <i>Nṛtta Hand Poses</i> , p. 29; <i>Chest</i> , p. 41; <i>Sides</i> , p. 43; <i>Hips</i> , p. 43; <i>Feet</i> , p. 44; <i>Shoulders</i> , p. 47.	
PRATYAṄGA-S ..	48
<i>Neck</i> , p. 48; <i>Arms</i> , p. 49; <i>Belly and Back</i> , p. 53; <i>Thighs</i> , p. 54; <i>Shanks</i> , p. 55; <i>Wrists</i> , p. 56; <i>Knees</i> , p. 57; <i>Ornaments</i> , p. 58.	
UPAṄGA-S ..	58
<i>Glances</i> , p. 58; <i>Glances Expressing Rasa</i> , p. 59; <i>Glances</i> <i>Expressing Permanent Moods</i> , p. 61; <i>Glances Expressing</i> <i>Transitory Moods</i> , p. 63; <i>Eyebrows</i> , p. 67; <i>Eyelids</i> , p. 69; <i>Pupils</i> , p. 70; <i>Cheeks</i> , p. 73; <i>Nose</i> , p. 74; <i>Breath</i> , p. 75; <i>Lips</i> , p. 77; <i>Teeth</i> , p. 79; <i>Tongue</i> , p. 80; <i>Chin</i> , p. 81; <i>Mouth</i> , p. 83; <i>Heels</i> , p. 84; <i>Ankles</i> , p. 84; <i>Fingers</i> , p. 84; <i>Toes</i> , p. 84; <i>Soles</i> , p. 85; <i>Facial Colour</i> , p. 86.	
Positions of the Hands, p. 87; Movements of the Hands, p. 88; Actions of the Hands, p. 88; Places for the Hands, p. 89.	
NṚTTAKARAṆA-S ..	90
Utplutikaraṇa-s ..	121
AṄGAHĀRA-S ..	127
Recaka-s ..	138
CĀRI-S ..	138
<i>Earthly Cāri-s</i> , p. 140; <i>Aerial Cāri-s</i> , p. 144; <i>Earthly</i> <i>Deśī Cāri-s</i> , p. 149; <i>Aerial Deśī Cāri-s</i> , p. 154.	

POSTURES (STHĀNA-S)	.. 157
<i>Postures for Men</i> , p. 159; <i>Postures for Women</i> , p. 162;	
<i>Deśī Postures</i> , p. 164; <i>Sitting Postures</i> , p. 168; <i>Reclining Postures</i> , p. 170.	
Style (Vṛtti)	.. 171
Ways of Using Weapons (Nyāya-s)	.. 173
MAṆḌALA-S	.. 175
<i>Earthly Maṇḍala-s</i> , p. 175; <i>Aerial Maṇḍala-s</i> , p. 178.	
Lāsyāṅga-s	.. 182
Rekhā	.. 183
Procedure for Practice	.. 184
A Person fit for Dancing, p. 184; Merits of the Dancer, p. 185; Defects of the Dancer, p. 186; Decorations of the Dancer, p. 187.	
The Teacher, p. 187; The Dance Troupe (Saṃpradāya), p. 188; Merits and Defects of the Troupe, p. 189.	
The Pure Style (Śuddha-paddhati), p. 190; Gauṇḍalīvidhi, p. 191; Peraṇin, p. 194; Peraṇī paddhati, p. 197.	
Ācārya, p. 198; The Actor (Naṭa), p. 198; The Dancer (Nartaka), p. 198; Vaitālika, p. 198; Cāraṇa, p. 199; Kohlāṭika, p. 199.	
The Audience, p. 199; The President of the Assembly, p. 200; The Seating of the Assembly, p. 200.	
THE NINE SENTIMENTS (RASA-S)	.. 202
<i>The Erotic sentiment</i> , p. 206; <i>The Comic sentiment</i> , p. 211;	
<i>The Pathetic sentiment</i> , p. 213; <i>The Furious sentiment</i> , p. 216;	
<i>The Heroic sentiment</i> , p. 218; <i>The Fearful sentiment</i> , p. 220;	
<i>The Odious sentiment</i> , p. 221; <i>The Marvellous sentiment</i> , p. 222; <i>The Tranquil sentiment</i> , p. 223.	
The Transitory Moods	.. 226
The Temperamental States	.. 241
Conclusion	.. 244
Index	.. 247

## SAMGĪTARATNĀKARA

WE BOW to the energetic (*sāttvika*) Śiva, whose body movement (*āṅgika*) is the phenomenal world, whose articulate expression (*vācika*) constitutes all verbal expression, and whose ornaments (*āhārya*) are the moon, stars, etc. 1

[This treatise on] dancing, destroying sorrows, is composed by Śārṅgadeva, rich in boundless knowledge attained through the grace of Śiva. 2

It [the art of dancing] is reputed to be threefold, [comprising] Nāṭya, Nṛtya, and Nṛtta. At first, the fourfaced [Brahmā] gave to Bharata the sacred lore of dancing. Thereafter Bharata, along with groups of Gandharva-s and Apsaras-es, demonstrated Nāṭya, Nṛtya, and Nṛtta in the presence of Śiva. Then Śiva remembered his own performance of Uddhata (forceful dancing) and demonstrated [it] to Bharata, through Taṇḍu, the leader of his attendant hosts. With pleasure Śiva also demonstrated before him Lāsya (graceful dancing) and demonstrated [it] to Bharata, through Taṇḍu, the leader of his attendant hosts. With pleasure Śiva also demonstrated before him Lāsya (graceful dancing), through Pārvatī. Having learnt from Taṇḍu, the sages [Bharata and others] taught Tāṇḍava to mortals. Pārvatī trained Uṣā, the daughter of the demon Bāṇa, in Lāsya; through her the Gopī-s of Dvārakā and through them the women of the Saurāṣṭra



country; and by these were taught the women of various countries. Thus received traditionally, this [art] has been established in the world. 3-8

The lotus-born [Brahmā] took the verbal text (Pāṭhya), the gestures (Abhinaya-s), the song (Gīta), and the sentiments (Rasa-s) from the Ṛg, Yajus, Sāma, and Atharva Veda-s, respectively, and created this triad [of Nāṭya, Nṛtya, and Nṛtta] which bestows righteousness (*dharma*), gratification of desires (*kāma*), wealth (*artha*), and liberation (*mokṣa*); increases fame, proficiency, good fortune, and cleverness; gives rise to magnanimity, steadiness, courage, and pleasure; and destroys grief, suffering, sorrow, loneliness, and fatigue. 9-11

This is verily higher than the great Bliss of Brahman. How else could it have captivated the minds of Nārada and others [who have realized Brahman]? Beyond this there is nothing to be seen or heard in this world. 12-3

These two, Nāṭya and Nṛtya, which bestow the desired goal free from all afflictions [i.e., liberation], should always be witnessed by one who has fulfilled his duties, especially during festive occasions. 13-4

Of these, Nṛtta, originated by Brahmā, should be performed at the coronation of kings, great festivals, [festive] processions, temple processions of gods, weddings, the coming together of dear ones, triumphal entry into cities, house-warming ceremonies, and the birth of a son; [it is] auspicious for all activities. 14-6

We shall now describe fully the triad, Nāṭya and others. The term Nāṭya primarily means Rasa

(sentiment); through implication, dancing which makes Rasa manifest, and consists of the four types of Abhinaya (gestures), is said to be Nāṭya, by the learned. It connotes Abhinaya which is found in an actor, which suggests the Determinants (Vibhāva-s) connected with the text of dramas and which gives the audience uninterrupted enjoyment of Rasa. 16-9

I shall relate the definitions of Vibhāva, etc., in the section dealing with Rasa. 19

Abhinaya is of four kinds: Āṅgika, Vācika, Āhārya, and Sāttvika. Of these, Āṅgika is demonstrated by [the artistic gestures and movements of] the limbs of the body. The text of the poem, drama, etc., presented by the vocal organs [through correct recital] constitutes Vācika. Decoration with garlands, bracelets, crown, etc., [costumes, weapons, make-up and the like] constitutes Āhārya. The indication of the internal feelings of the actor [also reciprocated by the spectators] constitutes Sāttvika. 20-2

The proper way of rendering this [Abhinaya] is said to be twofold: *loka-dharmī* (conforming to what exists in the world) and *nāṭya-dharmī* (the ideal to be followed as laid down in treatises on the dance). These again are of two kinds [each]. 22-3

The ancients spoke of two kinds of *loka-dharmī*: *cittavṛttyarpikā* (indicating a particular frame of mind) and *bāhyavastvanukārini* (imitation of external objects). 23-4

The former (*cittavṛttyarpikā*) adopts the Kaiśiki-vṛtti useful for stage representation and gives beauty

suited for such [representation] to what is common in the world; while the other follows the ordinary modes only to some extent through Āveṣṭita and other [Karaṇa-s].<sup>1</sup> 24-5

The learned speak of this twofold variety in the case of *nāṭya-dharmī* also. 26

That which demonstrates moods exclusively through gestures of the limbs (*Āṅgikābhinaya*) is known as *Nṛtya*. It is well known to all learned in *Nṛtya* by the term *Mārga*. 26-7

The movements of the body, quite devoid of all kinds of *Abhinaya-s* (gestures) in the manner prescribed in connection with *Āṅgika*-[*abhinaya*], is known as *Nṛtta* by those well versed in dancing. 27-8

These two [*Nṛtya* and *Nṛtta*] are said to be of two kinds: *Tāṇḍava* and *Lāsyā*. *Tāṇḍava* is accepted to be that which was [originally] described by *Taṇḍu*. It is mainly forceful (*uddhata*) in performance, has *Vardhamāna*, *Āsārīta* and other types of songs with the appropriate *Dhruva-s*, and is employed predominantly with *Karaṇa-s* and *Āṅgahāra-s*.<sup>2</sup> *Lāsyā* requires delicate movements and arouses the erotic sentiment. 28-30

Three varieties of *Nṛtta* are known: *Viṣama*, *Vikāṭa*, and *Laghu*. Of these, dancing round and round with ropes<sup>3</sup> and the like is *Viṣama*. That

<sup>1</sup> Cf. vv. 537-8 ff.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. v. 568 ff.

<sup>3</sup> In straight rotations.

which is ludicrous in form, dress, and movement is considered to be Vikāṭa. That which is constituted by Añcita and other minor Karaṇa-s is known as Laghu. 31-2

The Nāṭya described by the ancient sage Bharata, consisting of the indication through gestures of the sentence-meaning and the [individual] word-meanings of the texts in dramas, and thus suggesting the sentiments and the moods, is employed only in dramas; therefore, leaving aside the three varieties of dancing connected with that, only Āṅgikābhinaya is being dealt with here. 33-4

Of this (Āṅgikābhinaya) the three [subdivisions], Śākhā, Aṅkura, and Nṛtta, are considered important. Of these, that which is known as Śākhā consists of various poses of the hand. Aṅkura is [the gesture] made on the basis of the meaning of the previous passage of the text. When the gesture anticipates the meaning of the passages that follow, it is known as Sūcī. That which is accomplished through Karaṇa-s and Aṅgahāra-s is Nṛtta. Sūcī and Aṅkura are not useful [for the present purpose], but are incidentally mentioned here. 35-7

Here [in Āṅgikābhinaya], the Aṅga-s are said to be six: the head, the two hands, the chest, the sides, the hips, and the two feet. Other [people] include the shoulders. The Pratyāṅga-s are also six in number: the neck, the two arms, the back, as also the belly, the two thighs, and the two shanks. Other [experts] include three more as well: the wrists, the knees, and

the ornaments worn on the limbs. The eyes, the eyebrows, the eyelashes, and the pupils of the eye, the cheeks, the nose, and the breath, the lips, the teeth, the tongue, the chin, and likewise the mouth—these are the twelve Upāṅga-s in the head. Those [i.e., Upāṅga-s] on the other limbs are the heels, the ankles, the fingers of the hand, as well as the toes and the soles of the feet.

38-42

The colour of the face (Mukharāga); the positions of the hands (Karapracāra-s); the movements of the hands (Karakaraṇa-s); the actions of the hands (Karakarma-s); the places for the hands (Hastakṣetra-s); the twofold Karaṇa-s, the pure and those accompanied by jumps (Utpluti-s); Aṅgahāra-s along with their Recaka-s; the Cārī-s, both Śuddha (pure) and Deśistha (provincial variants); then the Sthānaka-s; Vṛtti-s; Nyāya-s along with their Pravacāra-s; Maṇḍala-s of all kinds; the Lāsyāṅga-s; then the Rekhā; the procedure for practice (Śrama); definition of a person fit for dancing (Pātra), her qualifications, disqualifications and decoration; description of the dance teacher; the dance troupe, its merits and demerits; the pure mode; the rule relating to Gauṇḍalī; the correct description of Peraṇin and his style; the Ācārya; description of Naṭa, Nartaka, Vaitālīka, Cāraṇa, Kohlāṭika, the assembled spectators, the leader of the assembly, and the location of the assembly: description of the Rasa-s (sentiments); description of the Bhāva-s (moods)—These we describe in this chapter in the given order.

42-8

## A Ṇ G A - S

## HEAD

THE HEAD movements are known to be of fourteen kinds: Dhuta, Vidhuta, Ādhūta, Avadhūta, Kampita, Ākampita, Udvāhita, Parivāhita, Añcita, Nihañcita, Parāvṛtta, Utkṣipta, Adhomukha, and Lolita. Other [experts] say there are five more varieties: Tiryañnatonnata, Skandhānata, Ārātrika, Sama, and Pārśvābhimukha. 49-51

*Dhuta*

The head when obliquely bent slowly and alternately [from side to side] is known as Dhuta. Its use has been pointed out by Bharata and others to indicate someone remaining in a solitary place; glancing on either side; a disconsolate state of mind; astonishment; sorrow; aversion for a thing; and dissent. 52-3

*Vidhuta*

The same [head movement indicated above], at a quicker pace is called Vidhuta. This is applied in cases of affliction by a chill; fever; fear; or soon after drinking liquor. 54

*Ādhūta*

The head lifted once obliquely upwards is Ādhūta. Its application has been prescribed in looking at one's own limbs with pride; in looking up towards

one standing at the side; and in the proud attitude, 'I am powerful'. 55-6

### *Avadhūta*

Bringing down the head once is said to be *Avadhūta*. The learned say that this should be used when indicating standing; a place; in signalling to another individual; when inviting; and in the course of conversation. 56-7

### *Kampita*

Shaking the head many times quickly up and down is *Kampita*. This head [movement] is to be used to indicate understanding; to signify approval; in anger; in uncertainty; in threatening; and in hurriedly interrogating. 58-9

### *Ākampita*

The same [movement] made twice slowly is *Ākampita*. This is employed when pointing to someone standing in front; questioning him; signalling to another individual; giving advice; inviting [someone]; and in expressing one's opinion. 59-60

### *Udvāhita*

The head lifted upwards once is *Udvāhita*. This is used to signify the proud attitude, 'In this matter I am powerful'. 61

### *Parivāhita*

A circular movement of the head is *Parivāhita*. Discerning judges say that this head [movement]

should be applied in cases of pride due to excessive shyness; when imitating one's lover; when filled with wonder; in smiling; in rejoicing; anger; approval; and reflection. 62-3

### *Añcita*

The [posture of the] head with neck slightly bent sidewise is Añcita. This should be adopted to show illness; anxiety; confusion of mind and fainting; and when the chin is supported [by the hand]. 64

### *Nihañcita*

In Nihañcita the shoulder is thrown up and the neck bent down. This occurs in Vilāsa, Lalita, Garva, Bibboka, Kilakiñcita, Moṭṭāyita, Kuṭṭamita, Māna, and Stambha. Vilāsa is the gait and other actions of a woman with beautiful limbs. Lalita is known to be the graceful charm of the body and limbs of a beautiful woman. Bibboka is indifference due to pride produced by the attainment of desires. Kila-kiñcita is said to be weeping, laughter, etc., resulting from joy. Moṭṭāyita is complete absorption in hearing of the beloved, looking at him, etc. Kuṭṭamita is feigning discomfort though overjoyed at having the hair pulled, etc., [by the lover]. Māna is jealous anger arising out of love. Stambha is stupefaction at the union of a newly married girl with her husband. 65-70

### *Parāvṛtta*

The head with the face turned away is said to be Parāvṛtta. It should be used while turning away



the face out of anger, shyness, etc.; while imitating such a movement; and when looking backwards. 70-1

### *Utkṣipta*

The head with the face turned upwards is known as Utkṣipta. It is used to look at tall objects, the moon, and other [planets, etc.] that course the sky. 72

### *Adhomukha*

Adhomukha is what it signifies [face turned downwards] and is used to indicate shyness, sorrow, and in bowing [to someone]. 73

### *Lolita*

Lolita is [that posture of the head] with the eyes unsteady and gazing in all directions. It is used to indicate sleep, disease, possession by an evil spirit, intoxication, and fainting. 73-4

[The above] are the fourteen head postures enumerated by Bharata.

### *Tiryannatonnata*

When the head is bent crosswise and lifted up, it is Tiryannatonnata. It is said that this is used during Bibboka,<sup>1</sup> etc., of charming women. 74-5

### *Skandhānata*

The head bent on the shoulder is called Skandhānata. It is used to depict sleep, infatuation, fainting, and anxiety. 75-6

<sup>1</sup> See v. 67.

*Ārātrika*

When, after slightly touching either shoulder, the head is turned in a circular movement, it is *Ārātrika*. It is to be seen in expressing astonishment and the understanding of another's opinion. 76-7

*Sama*

The head when naturally straight is considered to be *Sama* and is used in depicting the natural state. 77

*Pārśvābhimukha*

*Pārśvābhimukha* is what it signifies [face turned aside] and is utilized for looking at someone standing at the side. 78

[The above] are the five types of head postures enumerated by other experts.

*HANDS*

*Patāka*, *Tripatāka*, then what is called *Ardha-candra*, *Kartarīmukha*, *Arāla*, *Muṣṭi*, *Śikhara*, *Kapittha*, *Khaṭakāmukha*, *Śukatuṇḍa*, *Kāṅgūla*, *Padmakōśa*, *Alapallava*, *Sūcīmukha*, *Sarpaśiras*, *Catura*, *Mṛga-śirṣaka*, *Haṃsāśya*, *Haṃsapakṣa*, *Bhramara*, and likewise *Mukula*, *Urṇanābha*, *Samdamśa* and another hand pose, *Tāmracūḍa*—these are considered to be the twenty-four unconjoined (*asamyuta*) hand poses [i.e., poses in which only one hand is employed unconjoined with the other]. Both hands are employed together, however, whenever it is required by what has to be demonstrated through gestures. 78-82

Añjali, what is designated Kapota, Karkaṭa, likewise Svastika, Ḍola, Puṣpapaṭa, Utsaṅga, Khaṭakāvardhamānaka, Gajadanta, Avahittha, Niṣadha, likewise Makara, and Vardhamāna—these are the thirteen conjoined hand poses. 82-4

The [above] thirty-seven are the hand poses used in Abhinaya, in the view of the sage [Bharata]. 84

[The two hands are employed in the following gestures]: Caturaśra, Udvṛtta, that named Talamukha, Svastika, that which is called Viprakīrṇa, Arālakhaṭakāmukha, Āviddhavaktra, Sūcyāśya, Recita, Ardharecita, Nitamba, Pallava, Keśabandha, Uttānavañcita, that which is called Latā, Karihasta, and what is known as Pakṣavañcitaka, Pakṣapadyotaka, Daṇḍapakṣa, Garuḍapakṣa, the two hand poses, Ūrdhva-maṇḍalin and Pārśvamaṇḍalin, Uromaṇḍalin, Uraḥ-pārśvārdhamaṇḍalin, Muṣṭikasvastika, and yet another, Nalinīpadmakōśaka, Alapadma, Ulbaṇa, Lalita, and Valita. These thirty are considered to be Nṛtta hand gestures used only in Nṛtta. Other [writers] say that these are applicable to Abhinaya also, in principle and in usage. 85-90

The sage states that the two hands in Latā pose are applicable in Nṛtta and in Abhinaya. Hence, it is implied that the other poses [prescribed for Nṛtta] can also be used in Abhinaya, since they are grouped together [with the Latā pose]. 91

Knowledge of their specific application is obtained through resourcefulness, tradition, and observation of worldly usage. Thus the elephant is represented by

the Karihasta gesture in the world. This is recognized by Abhinavagupta and other [experts]. 92-3

All these hand poses together are sixty-seven [in number]. The [usual] reckoning of these as sixty-four cannot be justified either by reasoning or by authoritative texts. Scholars may argue that these are only sixty-four in the following way. 93-4

[Construe the words] *svastikau hastau* as attributes of *viprakīrṇākhya* [in verse 85 of the text]; the hands of the Viprakīrṇa pose are only [the hands] that are separated after assuming the Svastika pose; and there is no [special] application [prescribed] for the Viprakīrṇa pose independently [of the Svastika pose]. Similarly [construe the word] *pārśvamaṇḍalināu* as an attribute of *uomaṇḍalināu* [in verse 88]; and *alapadmau* [=alapallava, as an attribute] of *ulbaṇau* [in verse 89]. The attribute and the substantive do not constitute different things; thus 'blue lotus' does not refer to two different flowers. 95-8

This reasoning is suggested by me to justify the usual reckoning [as sixty-four]. But in the separate enumeration and definition [of these hand poses], none of the teachers [authoritative writers] recognizes Svastika and others as attributes. 98-9

Certain writers speak of seventy varieties of hand poses by making mention of Nikuñcaka among the Asamyuta class, then the Dviśikhara hand pose among the Samyuta class and adding the Varadābhaya [pose of both hands] among the Nṛtta hand gestures. 100-1

## 1. SINGLE HAND POSES

*Patāka* (Flag)

When the thumb is bent, touching the root of the forefinger, and the palm and fingers are outstretched, the fingers pressed against one another, it is *Patāka*. It is employed in touching objects, administering a slap, to indicate a flag, caressing,<sup>1</sup> etc. When indicating flames, the fingers of this pose point upwards, separated from each other, and in movement. To indicate a shower of rain, [the fingers] of this [pose] point downwards; on the hips, [it] indicates the wings of a bird; moved upwards, tall things. To indicate playing on the drum, it points downwards. Moved upwards from the hip, the pose indicates lifting up. Brought from one's own side towards the face, it indicates facing an object. When shaken [sidewise] at one's side, it expresses negation. When the *Patāka* [hand] placed on the other *Patāka* [hand] is rubbed quickly, it indicates washing. Similarly, when rubbed slowly, it indicates crushing and wiping. For pulling up and holding rocks and other massive things, two of these [*Patāka*] should be made to face each other, separated<sup>2</sup> in the appropriate manner. With fingers moving down and up, this is used to indicate the speedy movement of wind and waves.

102-8

*Tripatāka* (Flag indicated with three fingers)

The same [i.e., *Patāka*] with the ring-finger bent is *Tripatāka*. It is prescribed in touching, etc., of

<sup>1</sup> Clapping of hands.<sup>2</sup> joined.

auspicious things like curd. With the palm facing outwards, it is used for calling, by bending the two fingers which are close together. With the palm downwards and the two fingers thrown outwards, it is used to indicate what has been abandoned through indifference. Placed over the head, with the palm on one side, it should be used in making salutation. With the two fingers facing upwards, it is accepted for lifting up [another's] face. With the two fingers alternately moving down and up, it is used to indicate doubt. Turned downwards and moved round about the head, it indicates the wearing of a turban. In the same manner moving [round] further upwards from the head, it indicates the wearing of a crown. By closing the nose, mouth and ears with the two fingers, this [pose] indicates undesirable smell, words and noise respectively. The hand [in this pose] with the two fingers pointing downwards, fluttering near the hip, and moved upwards, downwards, and crosswise indicates respectively a small bird, a stream, and slight breeze. With the ring-finger placed near the eye and moved downwards [this pose] indicates tears and wiping the same; [with the ring-finger placed] on the forehead, the Tilaka [mark on the forehead]; and with the same [finger] placed on the curls on the forehead, the pushing aside of the curls. 109-16

*Ardhacandra* (Half-moon)

When all the fingers are close together on one side and the thumb remains on the other, resembling the form of the crescent moon, it is said to be *Ardhacandra*.

It should be turned upwards aloft to indicate the crescent moon. To indicate a young tree it should be moved upwards. Holding the cheek and turned away, it indicates fatigue. It is also used for a slender waist, the forcible ejection [of persons by the neck] and the like. 117-9

*Kartarīmukha* (Scissor's blade)

When the forefinger of the Tripatāka pose is separated from the middle finger and remains behind it, then it is *Kartarīmukha*. It is employed to indicate the adorning of the foot with lac-dye, etc. Moved downwards, with the middle finger in the place of the forefinger and the forefinger again resuming its former position, it indicates falling. Pointed forwards and turned to face upwards it is used to indicate reading anything written. 119-21

*Arāla* (Bent)

When each of the fingers beginning with the forefinger is separated from the next by greater and greater intervals and is higher and higher and slightly bent, while the forefinger is curved like a bow and the thumb bent, it is called *Arāla*. Placed against the heart of men it is said to be applicable in benediction and the like. Below, it should be applied twice or thrice to indicate the gathering of women's hair into a knot or loosening it. To indicate a crowd, it reaches its own side from the other side in a circular movement. With the fingers turned downwards it is used for calling.

When the two hands [in this pose], move round clockwise, with the tips of the fingers making the Svastika, it indicates marriage. For the circumambulation of deities, this Arāla pose alone [without the Svastika] is to be moved around clockwise. To indicate questions like 'Who art thou?', 'Who am I?', 'What connection is there [between us both]?', suggesting the absence of connection, this pose is employed again and again with the fingers thrown outwards. Placed on the forehead the same pose indicates the wiping off of perspiration from the forehead and is used in situations mentioned in the case of Tripatāka. 122-8

### *Muṣṭi* (Fist)

When the finger-tips rest compactly in the middle of the palm, not covered [by the fingers], and the thumb remains pressed against the middle finger, that is called *Muṣṭi*. It is employed to indicate the holding of a spear, a sword or a stick and fighting of various kinds; and with the thumb turned forward, [this pose indicates] running; both hands are used to indicate wrestling. 128-30

### *Śikhara* (Crest)

When the thumb of *Muṣṭi* points upwards, it becomes *Śikhara*. It is used in hurling a javelin or spear, in grasping a bow, arrow or goad. In rearranging the curls, *Muṣṭi* is also employed; and that is following the practice of people in everyday life. 130-1



*Kapittha* (Wood apple)

If the tip of the forefinger of Śikhara touches the tip of the thumb, then it is Kapittha. It is employed in holding a spear, the weapon Vajra, the discus bow, mace, etc., as well as in drawing an arrow [mounted on the bow], etc. Sometimes, Kapittha and Śikhara are interchangeable. 132-3

*Khaṭakāmukha*

If the ring-finger and the little finger of Kapittha are thrown upwards, separated and bent, then there is the Khaṭakāmukha [pose]. Facing upwards, [this pose] is employed in holding the reins and Cāmara-s of horses, etc., in plucking flowers, in putting on strings of pearls and garlands, in drawing out arrows, and in churning. When held towards the face, it indicates the holding of a mirror. Both hands are used, with the palms facing downwards, to indicate the grinding of substances like musk. It is also used to indicate clipping off the stalks of betel leaves, etc. 134-7

*Śukatunḍa* (Parrot-beak)

When the forefinger and the ring-finger of Arāla are very much bent, then it is Śukatunḍa. It is employed to indicate anger between lovers due to recent jealousy, or exchange of [hot] words such as ‘ [It is] not you ’, ‘ [It is] not I ’, ‘ I do not need your help ’ and so on, and in casting dice in gambling, etc. For dismissing with contempt or beckoning, the fingers should be thrown outwards and inwards respectively. 137-9

*Kāṅgūla*

In Kāṅgūla, the ring-finger is bent, the little finger pointed upwards, and the forefinger, thumb, and middle finger held upwards in a [triangular] position like that of the three [sacrificial] fires. It is employed to indicate a small fruit, a morsel of moderate size, imitating a cat's paw, etc. It is also prescribed for caressing the chin of children. 140-1

*Padmakośa* (Lotus-bud)

In Padmakośa the thumb and other fingers are bent like a bow, separated from each other with tips unattached. It should be employed in worshipping God and in making offerings. With the tips [of the fingers moved] outwards twice or thrice, this hand pose indicates heaps of flowers. It is also used for the Bilva, Kapittha, and other fruits and the breasts of women. 142-3

*Alapallava*

That is the Alapallava pose in which, after making the Vyāvartita movement [Karaṇa], the fingers stand sidewise along the palm. Alapadma is the very same. As regards the fingers of this [pose], some writers mention Parivartita instead of Vyāvartita. This pose is used to indicate [the question], 'Whose art thou?', [the statement] 'There is not', and in negation. It is used by women to express only what is despicable, inappropriate, and false. 144-6

*Sūcīmukha* (Needle-point)

When the forefinger of Khaṭakāmukha is stretched upwards that pose is Sūcīmukha. Its application is described here: It indicates the missile named Cakra (discus), the potter's wheel, the chariot-wheel, and a crowd of people, when the forefinger is whirled round facing upwards, pointing downwards, remaining at one's side, and proceeding from the other side to its own side, respectively. In indicating a flag it is lifted aloft. To express approval, [with the words, 'That is right'], it is made to swing. To indicate [the number] one, the forefinger is lifted up. When it is placed on the nose it is used to examine the breath. When the forefingers of both hands, with the palms facing downwards, are brought together side by side, they indicate union; when separated, they denote separation. They are thus explained by Śārṅgadeva. 147-51

*Sarpaśiras* (Snake-hood)

When Patāka is curved in the middle then it is the Sarpaśiras pose. Facing upwards, it is used for offering water to the Deva-s. Facing downwards, it indicates the movement of a serpent, stroking the temples of an elephant, and the slapping of shoulders by wrestlers in a contest. 152-3

*Catura*

When the thumb of this [Sarpaśiras] is placed on the middle joint of the middle finger and the little finger stands erect, that pose is known as Catura.

Other [experts] describe [it as] the placing of the thumb of Patāka at the root of the middle finger; some others say that the little finger is to be slightly moved backwards. When placed near the face, it is used to indicate tact. The two hands joined at the wrists are used to indicate modesty. When placed on the side, it indicates deliberation. Next to the heart, it indicates reasoning. When combined with Udveṣṭita [Karaṇa], it indicates sportfulness. With the palm turned upwards, it is indicative of playing a trick, casting dice, and pacification.<sup>1</sup> When the thumb and the middle finger are rubbed against each other, [this pose] indicates softness. When both hands in this Catura pose are kept together, they are indicative of clever speech. 154-8

### *Mṛgaśīrṣa* (Deer-head)

When the thumb and the little finger of Sarpaśīras project upwards, the pose is called Mṛgaśīrṣa. Facing downwards, it signifies 'today', 'here', and 'now'; turned upwards, it signifies the throwing of dice; when placed over the cheek and other places, it is used to wipe off perspiration from the cheek, etc. 159-60

### *Haṃsāśya* (Swan-face)

Where the forefinger, the thumb, and the middle finger are joined in a [triangular] position like the three [sacrificial] fires, while the other two fingers point upwards separately, that is called Haṃsāśya. With the

<sup>1</sup> The text should be *same*.

tip rubbing [against the other finger-tips], this pose indicates what is soft or insignificant; [with the tips] churning round, it indicates what is smooth; thrown out, it indicates what is small; shaken, it indicates what is loose or light. [With the tips] separated and closed again in the appropriate manner, this pose indicates the plucking of flowers, etc. 161-3

### *Haṃsapakṣa* (Swan-wing)

If the three fingers beginning with the forefinger of Patāka are slightly bent at their roots, the pose is called Haṃsapakṣa. This should be used for Ācamana (ceremonial sipping of water), and anointing with sandal-paste and the like. Placed near the chin, it is indicative of supporting the chin when in sorrow; with the arms forming a circle, the two hands [in this pose] are used to show a huge pillar, and for embracing someone in front; crossed in Svastika [each hand being brought near the other shoulder], they refer to an embrace. To indicate the various sentiments, this pose should be used along with horripilation and other indications of emotions (Bhāva-s) in accordance with each Rasa. In the case of the other hand poses also, there should be the indications of emotions according to the Rasa. 163-7

### *Bhramara* (Bee)

When the tips of the thumb and the middle finger are joined together, the forefinger bent, and the two other fingers extended apart from each other, the pose is Bhramara. It is used for holding flowers with long

stalks, and indicates ear-rings made of palm-leaf (*iālāpatra*), as well as plucking out a thorn, etc. 167-9

### *Mukula* (Bud)

That is *Mukula* in which all the fingers held compactly together and pointing upwards are joined to the tip of the thumb. It is used to indicate the bud of a lotus, etc., offering oblations, worshipping gods, eating, etc. When opened out and restored to its natural position repeatedly, it is indicative of gifts, haste, kissing the mouth, and throwing a flying kiss [Viṭa's kiss] in the presence of women. When placed on the breast, armpit, etc., this pose indicates Ācchuritaka. When, with the five fingers, a nail-mark is made over the breast, etc., with some noise, then those proficient in the Kāmasūtra know it as Ācchuritaka.

169-73

### *Ūṛṇanābha* (Spider)

When the five fingers of Padmakosā are bent, [the pose is called] *Ūṛṇanābha*. This is to be employed in stealthy grasping, in catching someone by the hair, etc., and in scratching one's head. In indicating beasts with claws like the lion and the tiger, the two hands are crossed [in Svastika] and made to reach the region of the chin.

173-5

### *Samdamśa* (Pincers)

When the thumb and the forefinger of *Arāla* have their tips together and the middle of the palm is made slightly hollow, then [the pose] is said to be *Samdamśa*.

It is of three kinds: Agraja, Mukhaja, and Pārśvaja, defined respectively as pointing forwards, towards the face, and sidewise. The Agraja type of Saṁdamśa should be employed in pulling out a thorn, plucking small flowers, etc. The Mukhaja type of Saṁdamśa should be used in saying angrily, ' Fie [upon you] ', to remove flowers from their stalks, and in applying collyrium [to the eye] with a brush or a pencil; while the Pārśvaja type of Saṁdamśa should be employed with both hands in threading pearls or piercing them, and in expounding the truth. To indicate a conversation in an angry mood, this pose should be assumed by the left hand and the tip slightly whirled around. It is used also to indicate preparing lac-dye paste. Thus says Śārṅgadeva. 175-81

### *Tāmracūḍa* (Cock)

If in Bhramara the little finger and the ring-finger rest on the palm, that [pose] is Tāmracūḍa. In beckoning a child, in rebuke, in measuring time, in singing, etc., in hastening and in inspiring confidence, etc., this pose should be used with a fall [of the index finger] making a sound. This is what is called Choṭikā (snapping). The view held by some that when the little finger of Muṣṭi is stretched out, the pose becomes Tāmracūḍa and that its application is for pointing out a thousand and other numbers is not acceptable to the doubtless scholar [Śārṅgadeva], because it is not found in usage.<sup>1</sup> 181-4

<sup>1</sup> Siṃhabhūpāla says that in the Mahratta country this pose is used to indicate numbers like a ' thousand '

## 2. COMBINED HAND POSES

*Añjali* (Joined palms)

Añjali is considered to be the placing together of the two palms in the Patāka pose. This should be applied in saluting deities, preceptors, and Brāhmaṇas by holding it on the head, the face, and the chest, respectively, by men, and in any manner by women.

185-6

*Kapota* (Pigeon)

The Kapota pose is that in which the two hands are joined at their bases, tips, and sides. Those well versed in hand poses know this also by another name: Kūrmaka. When facing forwards, it is used in saluting and in conversing with the preceptor; and for expressing modesty. Along with shaking of the head,<sup>1</sup> it is used by women and the lower classes of men.

186-8

*Kārkaṭa* (Crab)

When the fingers of the two hands are seen interlaced and stretched inwards and outwards, [the pose] is called Kārkaṭa. With the fingers stretched inwards, it should be employed to indicate deep thought and forbearance. With the palms and fingers facing outwards, it is used above, on the side, or in front to indicate the cracking of fingers, etc. Facing towards one, in the region of the belly, it indicates a corpulent body; with the chin resting on the back of the fingers,

<sup>1</sup> *Śisīre kamprah*; when shaken it indicates cold.



it indicates fatigue; contracted and with the fingers slightly facing one another, it indicates holding a conch [for blowing it]. The type with the fingers stretched outwards is used to indicate yawning, etc. 188-92

### *Svastika* (Cross)

That is considered to be Svastika, wherein the two hands, with one wrist placed over the other, face upwards at the left side of the body. In Abhinaya (gesticulation), the two hands may assume either the Arāla or the Patāka pose. The Svastika, when separated [at the wrist], is used by women for saying, 'It is so', and to indicate vast stretches such as the sky and the ocean. 192-4

### *Ḍola* (Swing)

When the two hands in the Patāka pose hang down with relaxed shoulders and loose fingers, [the pose is called] Ḍola. It is used to indicate illness, dejection, intoxication, fainting, flurry and the like. It is either motionless or swings on the side according to the situation. 195-6

### *Puṣpapuṭa* (Flower-basket)

Two Sarpasīrṣa-s with their external sides brought together form Puṣpapuṭa. It should be employed for holding and giving away grain, flowers, fruit, etc., and also water. It is also prescribed by the son of Soḍhala, [Śārṅgadeva], for flower-offerings. 196-7

*Utsaṅga* (Embrace)

When the two hands in the Arāla pose are stretched out and crossed in Svastika to rest on the other shoulder facing the body, it is spoken of as Utsaṅga. Some have held that the Svastika should rest on the right side of the body, with the palms facing downwards. Others hold that the fingers as well as the backs of the two hands should face the sides and be inserted under the armpits. Still others maintain the use of Sarpaśīrṣa-s in the place of Arāla-s. [This pose] is indicative of an undertaking very difficult of achievement, cold, an embrace, refusing to be placated,<sup>1</sup> bashfulness of women, etc.

198-201

*Khaṭakāvardhamānaka*

In Khaṭakāvardhamānaka the hands assume the Khaṭakāmukha pose and form a Svastika at the wrists, or face each other. It is used in receiving betel leaves, etc., in love-making by amorous persons, and in stringing flowers; according to another view, in speaking the truth, etc., and indicating the lily (*kumuda*), the lotus, a spear, and the holding of the conch [for blowing].<sup>2</sup>

202-4

*Gajadanta* (Elephant-tusk)

When two Sarpaśīrṣa hands are placed between each other's shoulder and elbow, [the pose] is called

<sup>1</sup> Not accepting decoration.

<sup>2</sup> According to the former view, it is used for offering betel leaves, etc., by lovers; and according to the latter, for stringing flowers, speaking the truth, etc.

Gajadanta. Other [experts] give the definition of Gajadanta as that in which the two Sarpaśirṣa hands are slightly bent at the elbow and placed over the shoulders, facing each other. It [the former], when moved to and fro, is used to indicate pulling rocks. This [pose] also indicates the carrying of the bride and the bridegroom to the place of marriage, holding pillars, and huge weights. Thus says [Śārṅgadeva], the son of Śrī Sodhala. 204-7

### *Avahittha* (Dissimulation)

If two Śukatunḍa hands, facing the chest, are turned downwards and further lowered, [the pose] is called Avahittha. It is used to indicate weakness, eagerness, breathing out, and thinness of the body. 208-9

### *Niṣadha*

When Kapittha encircles Mukula, [the pose] is Niṣadha. It is used to indicate correct understanding of the meaning of the Śāstra-s, grinding, that which is well established, and saying 'This is true'. Some say that the first type of Gajadanta is Niṣadha, which is considered to indicate valour, courage, majesty, pride, etc. 209-11

### *Makara* (Shark)

When the hands, assuming the pose called Patāka, face downwards and are placed one above the other with the thumbs stretched upwards, it is known as

**Makara.** This is used in representing a crocodile, a shark (Makara), etc., a tiger and other carnivorous animals, a lion, etc., as well as the flood of a river. 212-3

*Vardhamāna* (Extending)

If two Haṃsapakṣa hands are in Svastika and turned away, the pose then becomes Vardhamāna, which is used in opening a door. When the Svastika is separated, it is applied likewise in tearing open the chest. Others say that Sarpaśīrṣa should take the place of Haṃsapakṣa in this [pose]. Yet others accord their approval to this when done without Svastika. 214-6

### 3. NṚTTA HAND POSES

*Caturaśra* (Quadrangle)

When two Khaṭakāmukha hands level with the elbows and shoulders, face forwards in front of the chest and are at a distance of eight inches from the chest, that pose is called Caturaśra. It is used in pulling garlands, etc. 216-7

*Udvṛtta* (Waving)

In Udvṛtta, the two hands are [first] made to assume the Caturaśra pose and then the Haṃsapakṣa pose; and of these hands, that facing upwards is lowered and the other facing downwards reaches the chest. It is used for portraying a palm-leaf fan. Those skilled in Nṛtta say that the same is called Tālavṛnta. Others consider that two Haṃsapakṣa hands facing forwards,

when waved inwards and outwards, constitute Udvṛtta and should be used to indicate an acclamation of triumph. 218-20

*Talamukha* (Palms facing)

When two Haṁsapakṣa hands assume the Udvṛtta pose and then stand on the sides obliquely (Tryaśra) with palms facing each other, that [pose] is considered to be Talamukha. It is prescribed by the learned to indicate the sweet sound of a Mardala drum. 221-2

*Svastika* (Cross)

Svastika with the two Haṁsapakṣa-s not touching each other is the Svastika Nṛtta hand. 222

*Viprakīrṇa* (Scattered)

The same Svastika suddenly separated is Viprakīrṇa. Others hold that two Haṁsapakṣa hands with the tips pointing downwards or upwards, placed in front of the breasts and turned away [from each other] is Viprakīrṇa. 223-4

*Arālakhaṭakāmukha*

The two hands in Patāka are crossed in Svastika, then made to swing inwards and outwards [by Vyāvṛtta and Parivartana movements]; then assuming the Padma-kośa pose facing upwards, they are again swung inwards [in the Vyāvṛtti] and outwards [in the Parivṛtti] alternately; [then] the left hand should assume the Arāla pose facing upwards, and the other, the

Khaṭakāmukha facing downwards, effecting Caturaśra; or, with the two hands in Svastika [one of them assuming Arāla and the other Khaṭakāmukha]; or, the two hands, first in the Arāla pose and later made to assume the Khaṭakāmukha pose. This Nṛtta hand is called Arālakhaṭakāmukha. This is employed in the deliberation of merchants, ministers, etc. Others describe Arālakhaṭakāmukha thus: a Khaṭakāmukha hand, facing forwards, is placed in front of the chest and the other, in Arāla, with the tip raised, is stretched out on the side a little; then the two hands [one in Arāla and the other in Khaṭakāmukha] remain on their own sides or on opposite sides with the length of a span between each other. 224-9

### *Āviddhavaktra*

If two Patāka hands, having performed Vyāvṛtti, have the palms facing downwards, while the foreparts of the arms, the elbows, and the shoulders move about sportively, [the pose] is called Āviddhavaktra. Experts point out its application in movements which are crooked because of haste. 230-1

### *Sūcīmukha* (Needle-point)

When the middle finger and the thumb of two Sarpaśirṣa hands are joined together, reach the Caturaśra region [in front of the chest eight inches away as in Caturaśra; cf. verse 217] and move across with the forefinger stretched outwards, alternately, [the pose] is Sūcīmukha. Some say that the special feature

in this is that the two hands first assume Patāka, do Vyāvṛtta and Parivṛtta, and after turning, are stretched out. Some others mention as the characteristic of Sūcyāśya that the two hands in the Sarpaśirṣa pose, with the thumbs stretched out in the middle, assume Recitasvastika. 232-5

### *Recita* (Circling)

The two hands stretched out palms upwards are called Recita; or two Hamsapaksa hands, when making a quick circular movement, are said to constitute Recita; or else, if these two characteristics are combined together, that would be the characteristic of Recita. This [pose] should be applied to indicate tearing open the chest of the demon [Hiranyakaśipu] by Nṛsiṃha. 235-7

### *Ardharecita* (Half-circling)

The same [i.e., Recita] with one hand in Catu-  
raśra is Ardharecita. 237

### *Nitamba* (Hip)

When two Patāka hands, first face upwards and then downwards, proceeding from the region of the shoulder to the region of the hip, and then perform the Recaka movement, [the pose] is called Nitamba. 238-9

### *Pallava* (Sprout)

When two Patāka hands are stretched upwards in Vyāvartita and turned back in Parivartita, and

brought to form a Svastika, [the pose] is considered to be Pallava. Some say that here two Tripatāka hands are used. Yet others say that Pallava is that in which two Padmakōśa hands, loose at the wrists, are lowered and raised up, either at the sides or in front. Still others mention Patāka in the place of Padmakōśa.

239-42

*Keśabandha* (Tying the hair)

Keśabandha is that [pose] in which the two hands rise upwards from the two sides, without touching the sides, reach the head, and as in Nitamba, emerge from the region of the hair separately and repeatedly, the one proceeding out as the other moves towards it.

242-3

*Uttānavañcita*

When two Tripatāka hands are placed over the cheeks, the shoulders or the forehead, slightly crosswise and facing each other, remain for a while with the palms upwards and are then moved from that position, while the shoulders and the elbows are slightly shaken, [the pose] is known as Uttānavañcita. Others consider the slight lowering of the shoulders and the elbows [as characteristic of this pose].

244-6

*Latākara* (Creeper-arm)

When two Patāka hands are made to swing, stretched crosswise, that [pose] is Latākara. Some writers prescribe Tripatāka for this pose, as well as for Keśabandha and Nitamba.

246-7



*Karihasta* (Elephant-trunk)

*Karihasta* is known to be that [pose] in which one hand in *Latākara* is raised and swung on either side like the trunk of an elephant, as if to touch something, while the other hand, assuming *Khaṭakāmukha* or *Tripatāka*, is placed on the ear. Now [it may be asked], why has not the dual number been used here as in the case of the other poses?<sup>1</sup> We answer: Wherever, through a particular word, reference is made to two hands in the same type of pose, the dual is employed, as in *ghaṭau* and *caturaśrau*; wherever the two words signify different types [of poses], the dual is employed as in *ghaṭapaṭau* and *arālakhaṭakāmukhau*. In this instance, a single *Latākara* hand is seen having the form of an elephant's trunk. The pose of the other hand is of an accessory nature; therefore the singular number. And here the form of an elephant's trunk is not assumed by each of the two hands, as would be the case in *ghaṭau* [where the *ghaṭa* aspect is common to both]. In this case we cannot say that one hand indicates the *karin* (elephant) and the other hand, the meaning of the term *hasta* (the hand). This is neither an *ekaśeṣa* [as in *ghaṭau*] nor a *dvandva* compound [as in *ghaṭapaṭau*], to justify the dual number. [Also], the singular number has been used by the all-knowing sage (Bharata).

248-54

<sup>1</sup> The other *Nṛtta* hand poses are referred to in the dual number in the definitions.

*Pakṣavañcita*

Pakṣavañcita is that [pose] in which the tips of two Tripatāka hands are placed on the top part of the hip. 255

*Pakṣapradhyotaka*

These two hands [in the Pakṣavañcita pose] with their tips facing the sides, are considered to be the Pakṣapradhyotaka [pose]. Some speak of the palms facing upwards [as the feature of this pose], and others of fingers pointing upwards with palms facing outwards. These [different positions] assumed one after the other will be graceful. 255-6

*Daṇḍapakṣa*

When a Haṁsapakṣa hand approaches the chest from its own side, and then the other hand in Latākara is stretched crosswise with a sportive movement, and in sequence [the movement is repeated] likewise on the other side, the pose is Daṇḍapakṣa. Other [experts] consider the stretching of the hand to be simultaneous [with the movement of the other hand]. 257-8

*Garuḍapakṣaka* (Garuḍa-wing)

When two Patāka hands placed near the hip [with the palms] facing downwards and the elbows bent are made to move crosswise and upwards quickly, that [pose] is Garuḍapakṣaka. These are said to be Tripatāka hands by some, but this is not acceptable to the sage Bharata. 259-60

*Ūrdhvamaṇḍalin* (Circled above)

When the two hands [in Patāka] reach the sides from the chest [with Vyāvartana], thence the forehead, and are then outstretched with a circular movement, [the pose] is Ūrdhvamaṇḍalin. Some say that this pose ends when the hands reach the forehead; this is well known as Cakravartanikā, among the experts on dancing.

260-1

*Pārśvamaṇḍalin* (Circled at the side)

When two Patāka hands are placed on their respective sides, facing each other, they are said to be [in the] Pārśvamaṇḍalin [pose]. But others say that Pārśvamaṇḍalin is that [pose] in which the arms move around from their respective sides, with Āveṣṭita; experts in dancing consider this to be Kakṣavartanikā.

262-3

*Uromaṇḍalin* (Circled at the chest)

That is the Uromaṇḍalin [pose] in which the two hands [in Patāka] move simultaneously from the chest to the sides with a circular motion, one by Udveṣṭita and the other by Apaveṣṭita movement, and thence they move back to the chest in the reverse order [that which came to the side by Udveṣṭita movement going back by Apaveṣṭita movement, and vice versa]. Other [experts] say that the two hands should move around after being placed on the chest. This [pose] is well known as Urovartanikā among those who know. Some mention Haṁsapakṣa in the place of

Patāka, in the case of the three [aforesaid poses] beginning with the Ūrdhvamaṇḍalin. 264-7

*Urahpārśvārdhamaṇḍalin* (Half-circle at the chest and sides)

One hand is placed on the chest, palm upwards and the other is stretched out on the side [palm upwards]; then the hand on the chest, assuming the Alapadma pose, is brought to its own side with the Vyāvartita movement, while the other hand assuming the Arāla pose, reaches the chest with a circular motion by the Udveṣṭita movement; and again the other [hand is made to reach the chest, with a circular movement, in the Arāla pose]; by repeating this, the Urahpārśvārdhamaṇḍalin [gesture is performed]. 267-9

*Muṣṭikasvastika*

When one hand assumes the Arāla pose through a Vartanā movement [Āveṣṭita caused by the bending of its wrist], and the other the Alapallava pose [through Udveṣṭita caused by the bending of its wrist] several times, alternately, and then the two hands assuming the Khaṭakāmukha pose form a Svastika, then the pose is Muṣṭikasvastika. Kapittha, Śikhara or Muṣṭi hands can also form the Svastika. 270-1

*Nalinīpadmakōśa* (Lotus-bud)

When two Padmakōśa hands in the Svastika posture are separated through the Vyāvṛtta movement and face away from each other, [the pose] is Nalinīpadmakōśa.

Others say that two Padmakōśa hands at first joined at the wrists and facing each other and then separated with the Vyāvṛtti and Parivartana movements [simultaneously], form the Nalinīpadmakōśa [pose]. Some others say that the two Padmakōśa hands, when made to approach the knees through Vyāvṛtti and Parivartana movements [simultaneously], form this [Nṛtta pose]. Yet others say that the characteristic of this [pose] is as follows: The two hands in Padmakōśa reach the neighbourhood of the shoulders, the breasts, or the knees with a Vivartita movement. 272-6

### *Alapadmaka*

When two Alapallava hands in the region of the chest are made to approach the shoulders with an Udveṣṭita movement and then stretched out, [the pose] is Alapādmaka. 276-7

### *Ulbaṇa* (Strong)

When two Alapadma hands with their fingers quivering face the shoulders and are stretched over the shoulders, then [the pose] is said to be Ulbaṇa. 277-8

### *Lalita* (Delicate)

The learned consider two Pallava hands in the region of the head to be Lalita. Other [experts] speak of Lalita as having the two hands placed on the head, motionless, and without assuming the Caturaśra pose. Yet others mention that in Lalita two

Khaṭakāmukha hands touch each other's tips after slowly reaching the head. 278-80

### *Valita* (Bent round)

The two hands in what is called the Latā pose, when crossed in Svastika at the elbows, are considered to be the Valita [pose]. Other [experts] know it as Muṣṭikasvastika formed over the head with the Vivṛtta movement. Some others maintain that the Khaṭakāmukha pose, assumed by the two hands joined at the tips, [is the characteristic of this pose]. The two hands reaching upwards and bent backwards at the elbows are [also] considered as [the characteristic features of] Valita. The learned know that these [above-mentioned] Nṛtta hands can be used in sequence also. 280-2

These are the thirty Nṛtta hands.

### *Nikuñcaka*

Patāka with the thumb touching the middle finger at its root is the Nikuñcaka [pose]. It is employed to indicate a small quantity and the study of the Veda-s. 283

### *Dviśikhara* (Double-crested)

The joining of two Śikhara hands is considered to be the Dviśikhara [pose]. It is used to indicate lying on a bed, cracking the fingers, and humouring women. When the two Śikhara-s are joined and then, separated, negation is indicated. 284-5

*Varadābhaya*

If the right and the left hands in the Arāla pose assume the Varada (giving gifts) and Abhaya (giving protection) poses next to the corresponding hip, then [the pose] is said to be Varadābhaya [Nṛtta pose]. 285-6

The above are three additional hand poses described by other schools.

These seventy hand poses have been cited by me as an illustration. There are an infinite number of other poses, since the objects to be represented are infinite. They may also be created in this way, in accordance with what takes place in everyday life. 286-7

These hand poses, aided by the eyes, the eyebrows, facial colour, and other Upāṅga-s, as well as by the Pratyaṅga-s, should be made to express the Rasa-s and Bhāva-s. 287-8

Hand poses should move in the region of the forehead to represent superior things; should be placed over the chest in the case of standard things; and are prescribed lower down in the case of inferior things. 289

This procedure is prescribed by other [experts] in reference to superior and other types of characters. 290

These hand poses should be close [to the body] in the case of superior things; slightly further [away], in the case of standard things; and at a distance, in the case of inferior things. 290-1

The movements of the hands should be slight for representing anything experienced directly or

indicating intense Sāttvika Bhāva; they should be copious when representing anything experienced indirectly; while representing [experience] between the two, they should be moderate. 291-2

These hand poses should be used precisely by superior and ordinary characters, in accordance with the definition and in the correct position of the body and limbs (Sauṣṭhava);<sup>1</sup> by inferior types [they should be used] in a different manner [i.e., carelessly]. 292-3

Gesticulation with the hand is not prescribed for indicating one who is depressed, distracted, afraid, swooning, subjected to languor, tormented with disgust or sorrow, asleep, weary, stricken with old age, afflicted with disease or cold, inactive and absorbed in thought, in penance, intoxicated, mad, or careless. Hand poses such as the Karkaṭa that indicate the inner disposition are to a large extent applicable in cases of depression, etc., [mentioned above]. This is the opinion of the wise. 293-6

### CHEST

The positions of the chest are five: Sama, Ābhugna, Nirbhugna, Prakampita, and Udvāhita. We give their definitions. 296-7

#### *Sama*

The Sama chest is declared to be that which has Sauṣṭhava and the Caturaśra pose of the limbs,<sup>2</sup> while

<sup>1</sup> Cf. v. 1037.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. v. 1040.



remaining in its normal position. It is employed in indicating the natural state. 297-8

### *Ābhugna*

Ābhugna is the sunken and relaxed chest and indicates pride,<sup>1</sup> shyness, cold, heart-ache, sorrow, fainting, fear, flurry, and also disease and depression, according to [Śārṅgadeva], the devotee of Śiva. 298-9

### *Nirbhugna*

When the chest is steady and raised because the back is curved, [the pose] is Nirbhugna. It is used to indicate self-respect, taking an oath, stupefaction, a look of surprise, joyous speech,<sup>2</sup> and excessive pride. 300-1

### *Prakampita*

[When the chest] is incessantly thrown upwards and shaken, [the pose] is Prakampita. It indicates fear, laughter, fatigue, hard breathing, spasms, hiccoughs, and sobbing. 301-2

### *Udvāhita*

[When the chest is] lightly raised upwards, without shaking, [the pose] is called Udvāhita and is indicative of long-drawn breath, yawning, and looking at lofty objects. 302-3

<sup>1</sup> Seems to be a mistake; not in *Nāṭya Śāstra*.

<sup>2</sup> The reading *prahṛṣṭa* is taken.

## SIDES

Vivartita, Apasṛta, Prasārita, Nata, and Unnata, are the five positions of the side, enumerated by the learned. 303-4

*Vivartita*

Vivartita is the turning aside of the hip-joint and is employed in turning aside. 304

*Apasṛta*

Apasṛta is reverting from that [Vivartita] and is used for turning around from the sidewise position. 305

*Prasārita*

Prasārita is stretching both the sides and indicates joy, etc. 305

*Nata*

In the Nata [pose] the hips and the shoulders are bent [forward]. It is indicative of approaching somebody.<sup>1</sup> 306

*Unnata*

Unnata is the reverse of the former. It is indicative of retreating. 306

## HIPS

The positions of the hip are accepted to be of five kinds: Kampita, Udvāhita, Chinna, Vivṛtta, and Recita. I shall now give their definitions. 307

<sup>1</sup> The text should give *apasarṇa* for *upasarṇa* and *vice versa*.

*Kampita*

Kampita is considered to be that which has quick movements from side to side. It is employed to indicate the movements of hunchbacks, dwarfs, etc. 308

*Udvāhita*

When the hip is slowly raised from side to side, that is Udvāhita. It indicates the sportive gait of women and the gait of corpulent people. 309

*Chinna*

The Chinna hip results from turning the middle [of the body] obliquely on the sides. It is used in taking exercises, in hurrying, and in turning around to look at things. 310

*Vivṛtta*

Facing the front while the side is turned away, is the Vivṛtta hip. It is employed in turning around. 311

*Recita*

Rotating the hips on all sides is called Recita. It is used in turning around. 312

*F E E T*

Foot poses are of six kinds in the opinion of the sage Bharata: Sama, Añcita, Kuñcita, Sūci, Agratala-saṁcara, and Udghaṭṭita. Seven other foot poses are

mentioned by other [experts]: Tāḍita, Ghaṭitotsedha, Ghaṭṭita, Mardita, Agraga, Pārṣṇiga, and Pārśvaga. I shall give their definitions. 312-4

### *Sama*

The foot which rests on the ground naturally is called Sama. When stationary, it shows the natural state; when moving, it indicates moving around. 315

### *Añcita*

When the heels are on the ground, the balls of the feet raised upwards and the toes outstretched, [the pose] is Añcita. It is used for stamping with the foot,<sup>1</sup> turning round (Bhramaraka movement), etc. 316

### *Kuñcita*

When the toes are bent, the heels raised, and the arch bent, [the pose] is Kuñcita. It is used in the walk of a person who is very tired and in grasping something at a height. 317

### *Sūcī*

When the left foot is in the natural position, and the other [foot] touches the ground with the tip of the toe, while the other parts are raised, [the pose] is Sūcī. It is used for tying an anklet. 318

<sup>1</sup> The text should read *pādāhatih* for *pādo hasta*.

*Agratalasaṃcara*

When the heel is raised up, the big toe stretched, and the other toes curved down, the foot is [called] Agratalasaṃcara. It is used in urging, pounding, standing, causing pain, stamping the ground, pushing away what is on the ground, in the Recaka movement around, and in intoxication. 319-20

*Udghaṭṭita*

Standing on the balls of the feet and bringing the heel down to the ground, once or more [than once] is Udghaṭṭita. 321

*Tāḍita*

While holding to the ground with the heel, if the forepart [of the foot] strikes it [the ground], the foot is [called] Tāḍita. It indicates anger and pride. 322

*Ghaṭitotsedha*

Striking the ground often with the forepart and the heel, alternately, is Ghaṭitotsedha. 323

*Ghaṭṭita*

When the foot strikes the ground with the heel [the pose] of the foot, is Ghaṭṭita. It is employed in prompting. 323

*Mardita*

That pose is Mardita in which the sole rubs against the ground crosswise. 324

*Agraga*

Agraga is slipping [the foot] forward quickly.  
It should be used to indicate swampy ground. 324

*Pārṣṇiga*

Moving backwards on the heel is said to be the  
Pārṣṇiga foot. 325

*Pārśvaga*

When [the foot] either stands on its side or moves  
to the side, that [pose] is Pārśvaga. 325

## SHOULDERS

The positions of the shoulders are said to be of  
five kinds: Ekocca (one raised), Kārṇalagna (touching  
the ear), Ucchrita (stretched upwards), Srasta (relaxed),  
and Lolita (swinging). Their characteristics are indi-  
cated by their names. 326

*Ekocca*

The position of the shoulders called Ekocca  
indicates striking with the fist or the lance. 327

*Kārṇalagna*

In the opinion of the wise, the Kārṇalagna shoulder  
indicates an embrace and the cold season. 327

*Ucchrita*

Ucchrita indicates joy, pride, etc. 328

*Srasta*

Srasta indicates sorrow, fatigue, intoxication, and fainting. 328

*Lolita*

Lolita should be used in the dancing of Viṭa-s, and is mentioned by experts on dancing as indicative of laughter and playing on the Huḍukkā (a kind of drum). 328-9

## PRĀTYAṄGA-S

## NECK

Neck positions are of nine kinds: Sama, Nivṛtta, Valita, Recita, Kuñcita, Añcita, Tryaśra, Nata, and Unnata. 329-30

*Sama*

Sama is the natural position and is used in meditation, prayer, and the normal course of business. 330

*Nivṛtta*

When the neck returns [to its own position] after facing something, [the pose] is said to be Nivṛtta and indicates returning to the normal position [after facing elsewhere]. 331

*Valita*

[In the] Valita [pose] the neck faces sidewise. It is indicative of discomfort and looking askance. 332

*Recita*

Recita is shaking and moving [the neck] around. It indicates circular things and churning. 332

*Kuñcita*

Kuñcita is [the neck] slightly bent. It is used to indicate a load on the head and concealing oneself. 333

*Añcita*

Añcita is [the neck] stretched and moved about and is indicative of pulling [someone] by the hair, and of a half-glance. 333

*Tryaśra*

Tryaśra is [the neck] slanted to the side and it is indicative of fatigue, of a side-glance, and a load on the shoulder. 334

*Nata*

Nata is [the neck] bent low; it is indicative of tying an ornament [around the neck] and clasping the neck. 334

*Unnata*

Unnata is [the neck] thrown up and indicates displaying an ornament [worn around the neck] 335

## A R M S

The positions of the arms are said to be of ten kinds by wise men: Ūrdhvastha, Adhomukha, Tīryak,



Apaviddha, Prasārita, Añcita, Maṇḍalagati, Svastika, Udveṣṭita, and Prṣṭhānusārin. Other [experts] mention six other positions: Āviddha, Kuñcita, Namra, Sarala, Āndolita, and Utsārita. 335-7

### *Ūrdhvastha*

Ūrdhvastha is the arm reaching above the head and is used for pointing out tall objects. 338

### *Adhomukha*

Pointing to the ground is Adhomukha. 338

### *Tiryak*

Reaching to the side is Tiryak. 338

### *Apaviddha*

Apaviddha is the arm which proceeds out from the region of the chest with a circular movement. 339

### *Prasārita*

[The arm] stretched out towards the front is Prasārita. 339

### *Añcita*

[The arm] proceeding from the region of the chest and returning to the chest is Añcita. 340

### *Maṇḍalagati*

When the arm is turned round in all directions, it is called Maṇḍalagati. It is prescribed for brandishing a sword, etc. 340-1

*Svastika*

Svastika is crossing the arms so that they touch each other [at the wrists]. It is employed in the worship of the sun [by holding on the head], an embrace [by holding in front], and obeisance [by holding it lower down] 341-2

*Udveṣṭita*

The arm going out with a movement at the wrist is Udveṣṭita. 342-3

*Prṣṭhānusārin*

The arm reaching the back is Prṣṭhānusārin. It is used for taking an arrow out of the quiver and receiving betel leaves. 343

*Āviddha*

The arm moved inwards is Āviddha. 344

*Kuñcita*

When the arm is bent till the elbow is pointed, it is called Kuñcita. It is used in wielding a sword, etc., striking, eating, and drinking. So declares the doubtless scholar [Śārṅgadeva]. 344-5

*Namra*

Namra is [the arm] slightly bent; it is employed in praising and in carrying a garland. 345

*Sarala*

Sarala is [the arm] stretched out sidewise, upwards, and downwards. It is used, respectively, to imitate wings, for measuring [heights], and pointing out what is on the ground. 346

*Āndolita*

Āndolita (swinging) is what it signifies. 347

*Utsārita*

Utsārita is the arm reaching its own side from the other and is used in driving away a crowd. 347

Now, by employing these arm movements, collectively and separately, and resorting to various tempos like the Druta, thousands of Vartanā-s come into existence. These [Vartanā-s], full of grace, can be thought out by experts.<sup>1</sup> 348-9

If employed with Recaka-s, without sacrificing grace, these arm movements, full of various dextrous modes, are called Cālaka-s by experts. 349-50

They [the Cālaka-s] should be employed in the last *khaṇḍa* of the [instrumental compositions], Otā, Avatsa, Rigoṇī, Pada, Malapa, and the Upaśama of Gajara; also in [the last *khaṇḍa*] occurring in [the vocal compositions] Elā, etc.; likewise, in the last *khaṇḍa* of Dhruva, etc., belonging to the Sālagasūḍa type [of vocal compositions] and also in the last *khaṇḍa*

<sup>1</sup> Kallinātha quotes 24 varieties of Vartanā-s described by Kohala.

of Praharāṇa [one of the instrumental compositions]. Other [experts] say that they should also be employed elsewhere [i.e, in other *khaṇḍa-s*] as well as in vigorous (Proddhata) [song] having a soft beginning, and in Kavita [one of the instrumental compositions]; and not in any other place. 350-2

### BELLY AND BACK

The movements of the back are derived from the movements (Vartanā-s) of the belly [being just the opposite] and, hence, need not be separately dealt with. The belly is now dealt with. 353

Belly movements are of three kinds: Kṣāma, Khalla, and Pūrṇa. 354

#### *Kṣāma*

Kṣāma is caused by the sagging of the belly. It is employed to indicate yawning, laughing, breathing out, and weeping. 355

#### *Khalla*

Khalla is the hollowed [belly]. It is used to indicate one who is famished, sickly, or overcome with fatigue. It takes the form of the belly of a vampire, of Bhrṅgiriṭi [one of Śiva's attendants] etc. 356

#### *Pūrṇa*

Pūrṇa is the bulging [belly]. It is employed to indicate a diseased person, someone with a pot-belly, or one who has over-eaten. 356

Other [experts] mention in addition Riktapūrṇa, which is what the name signifies [i.e., emaciated at first, but grown big later]. It indicates respiratory disease. 356

### THIGHS

Thigh movements are of five kinds: Kampita, Valita, Stabdha, Udvartita, and Nivartita. 357

#### *Kampita*

Of these, that is known as Kampita in which the sides are lowered and raised [repeatedly]. It indicates the gait of low-class people. 357-8

#### *Valita*

In Valita, the knee moves inwards. It indicates the free gait of a woman. 358

#### *Stabdha*

Stabdha is the motionless [thigh]. It indicates depression and fear. 359

#### *Udvartita*

In Udvartita, the heel and the forepart of the sole are repeatedly thrown inwards and outwards. It is used in taking exercise and in Tāṇḍava. 359-60

#### *Nivartita*

Nivartita is caused by the heel moving inwards. It indicates haste and languor. 360

## SHANKS

The shank is described by Śārṅgadeva as of five kinds: Āvartita, Nata, Kṣipta, Udvāhita, and Parivartita. Others mention five other kinds of shanks: Niḥsṛta, Parāvṛtta, Tiraścīna, Bahirgata, and Kampita. 361-2

*Āvartita*

When the left foot is moved towards the right and the right foot towards the left, again and again, that is called Āvartita. It indicates the gait of the Vidūṣaka. 363

*Nata*

The Nata shank is caused by bending the knee and is employed in standing, sitting, and moving. 364

*Kṣipta*

Throwing [the shank] outwards is Kṣipta. It is used in taking exercises and in Tāṇḍava dancing. 364

*Udvāhita*

Udvāhita is the shank moved upwards. It indicates the gait of one possessed. 365

*Parivartita*

Parivartita is the shank of one who moves cross-wise. It is used in the Tāṇḍava dance. 365

*Niḥsṛta*

The shank which is stretched forwards is called Niḥsṛta. 366

*Parāvṛtta*

In Parāvṛtta, the shank is behind [the knee], while the knee touches the ground [i.e., kneeling]. This is done with the left shank in ceremonies for the manes, and with the other shank in propitiating the gods. 366-7

*Tiraścīna*

When the external side [of the shank] touches the ground it is Tiraścīna. It is employed in sitting. 367

*Bahirgata*

Bahirgata is the shank stretched sidewise. It is used in Nṛtta dancing. 368

*Kampita*

Kampita is shaking [the shank]. It should be used to indicate fear and the sound of anklet bells (Ghargharikā). 368

*WRISTS*

The movements of the wrist are of five kinds: Nikuñca, Ākuñcita, Cala, Bhrāmita, and Sama. 369

*Nikuñca*

Of these, Nikuñca is said to be that which is bent outwards. It is employed to indicate a gift, and giving refuge. 369-70

*Ākuñcita*

Ākuñcita is that which is bent inwards. It should be employed by wise men in pushing away people. 370

*Cala*

Cala is the repeating of Nikuñca and Ākuñcita. It is employed in invoking. 371

*Bhrāmita*

Bhrāmita is moving the wrist around. It is used in brandishing swords and knives. 371

*Sama*

Sama is the straight [wrist]. It is used for holding a book and receiving a gift. 372

*KNEES*

Knee poses are said to be of seven kinds by the learned: Saṁhata, Kuñcita, Ardhakuñcita, Nata, Unnata, Vivṛta, and Sama. 372-3

*Saṁhata*

Saṁhata is said to be the knee in contact with the other knee. It is indicative of shyness, anger, and jealousy. 373

*Kuñcita*

In Kuñcita, the thigh and the shank touch each other. It is used in sitting. 374



*Ardhakuñcita*

In the Ardhakuñcita knee, the hip is lowered. 374

*Nata*

Nata is the knee brought to the ground. It is employed in falling and prostrating. 375

*Unnata*

Unnata is the knee which reaches the region of the breast. It is employed in climbing hills. 375

*Vivṛta*

In Vivṛta, the two knees are turned outwards. It is used when sitting on an elephant. 376

*Sama*

Sama is the knee in its normal position. It indicates the natural posture. 376

## ORNAMENTS

The appropriate costume, etc., for various parts, are considered to be ornaments. 377

## UPĀṄGA-S

## GLANCES

Glances expressing Rasa should be looked upon as eight in number: Kānta, Hāsyā, Karuṇa, Raudra, Vīra, Bhayānaka, Bibhatsa, and Adbhuta. 377-8

The eight glances produced by the Sthāyibhāva-s (Permanent Moods), when they have not become transitory, are known as Sthāyi glances: Snigdha, Hṛṣṭa, Dina, Kruddha, Dṛpta, Bhayānvita, Jugupsita, and Vismita. 378-9

The glances relating to the Vyabhicāribhāva-s (Transitory Moods) are twenty in number: Śūnya, Malina, Śrānta, Lajjita, Śaṅkita, Mukula, Ardhamukula, Glāna, Jihma, Kuñcita, Vitarkita, Abhitapta, Viṣaṇṇa, Lalita, Ākekara, Vikośa, Vibhrānta, Vipluta, Trasta, and Madira. All these glances, added together, are accepted to be thirty-six. 380-2

### 1. GLANCES EXPRESSING RASA

#### *Kānta*

The Kānta glance is that which seems to drink in its object, is open, and extremely clear. It is accompanied by movements of the brows and Kaṭākṣa, and excites the passion of love. 383

Those well versed in the arts say that Kaṭākṣa is moving the pupils of the eyes here and there and letting them come to rest in a variety of [charming] ways. 384

#### *Hāsyā*

In the Hāsyā glance, the pupils are drawn slightly inwards and move in various ways; the eyelids are slightly contracted, at first slowly, later moderately, and then quickly. It is recommended for indicating the feeling of astonishment.<sup>1</sup> 385-6

<sup>1</sup> producing smiles?

*Karuṇa*

The Karuṇa glance is said to be that in which the upper eyelids droop down, tears fall, the pupils are dull with sorrow, and the eyes are directed solely towards the tip of the nose. 386-7

*Raudra*

The Raudra glance is said to have tremulous eyelids, motionless pupils, and intensely red and severe eyes. It is terrible with [knitting of] brows, and cruel. 387-8

*Vīra*

The Vīra glance is described by the wise as that which is steady, open, and majestic. It has even pupils, is bright, and narrowed at the corners. [This glance] indicates the eight varieties [of feeling]: generosity, courage, nobility, sweetness, delicacy, power, grace, and sportfulness. 389-90

*Bhayānaka*

The Bhayānaka glance is that in which the eyelids are stretched and turned upwards, while the pupils quiver and are turned upwards. It is employed to indicate running away in fear from the object seen. 390-1

*Bibhatsa*

Bibhatsa is that in which the eyelashes tremble and meet, the pupils are agitated, the eyelids lowered,

and the glance rests at the sides out of disgust at the object seen. 391-2

### *Adbhuta*

The Adbhuta glance is clear, with the pupils moving inwards and outwards in relation to the bright white of the eye, the tips of the eyelashes slightly lowered, and the [outer] ends of the eyes open. 392-3

These are employed, respectively, in the eight Rasa-s beginning with Śṛṅgāra.

## 2. GLANCES EXPRESSING PERMANENT MOODS

A glance expressive of Rasa becomes a glance expressive of Bhāva when the feeling is not strong enough. 394

### *Snigdha*

The glance known as Snigdha is open, lovely, and sweet, with charming eyebrows. It is characterized by Kaṭākṣa and is full of eagerness. Kīrtidhara and others say that one brow should be gently raised upwards in this [glance]. 394-5

### *Hṛṣṭa*

The Hṛṣṭa glance is spoken of as having full cheeks and pupils which move inwards. It is slightly lowered, moving, winking, and accompanying a smiling countenance. 396

### *Dīna*

The glance which has half-closed upper eyelids and slightly restricted [movements of the] pupils, has

tears, and is dull in movement, is considered to be  
Dina. 397

### *Kruddha*

[Śārṅgadeva], the devotee of Śiva, says that the Kruddha glance has motionless and raised eyelids, and is fierce, with slightly tremulous pupils and crookedly knit eyebrows. 398

### *Dṛpta*

The Dṛpta glance expresses fortitude, and is open and steady. 399

### *Bhayānvita*

The Bhayānvita glance is that in which the eye-balls seem to leave their sockets, the lids are wide open owing to the feeling [of fear], and the pupils agitated. 399-400

### *Jugupsita*

The Jugupsita glance is said to have indistinct vision, contracted eyelids, and pupils which are hidden. It expresses revulsion at the object seen. 400-1

### *Vismita*

The Vismita glance is considered to be expansive, with the two eyelids wide open, and the pupils turned upwards, motionless. 401-2

These glances are employed, respectively, in the eight Permanent Moods (Sthāyibhāva-s), beginning with Love. 402

## 3. GLANCES EXPRESSING TRANSITORY MOODS

*Śūnya*

The Śūnya glance has pupils and eyes in the normal position. It [is vacant and] does not see the objects in its ken, and is immobile and dull. It is prescribed for indicating anxiety. 403

*Malina*

This is the glance in which the pupils are withdrawn from their object, the eyelids are a little closed, the corners are devoid of brilliance, and the tips of the eyelashes flutter. It is employed in the Vihṛta of women.

Vihṛta is considered to be refraining from conversation with the beloved even when the time is appropriate for it. 404-5

*Śrānta*

The Śrānta glance is not directed to a distance. It has wilted eyelids and is slothful of movement; the pupils are unsteady and the corners slightly narrowed. It indicates fatigue. 406

*Lajjita*

Lajjita is considered to be the glance in which the eyelashes tend to meet each other, the pupils are cast down, and the upper eyelids droop. It should be used to indicate shyness. 407

*Śaṅkita*

Śaṅkita is described by the doubtless [Śārṅgadeva] as the glance which is sometimes unsteady and sometimes still, looking sidewise, seemingly directed outwards, yet looking stealthily, and withdrawing immediately from the object. It indicates suspicion. 408-9

*Mukula*

The glance with fluttering eyelashes meeting at the tips, and pupils tranquil with pleasure, is Mukula. It indicates happiness, and agreeable touch and smell. 409-10

*Ardhamukula*

That which is half open,<sup>1</sup> with somewhat mobile pupils and half-closed lids is Ardhamukula. It indicates anything which gives pleasure. 410-1

*Glāna*

The Glāna glance has sunken pupils and moves slowly and feebly, with eyelashes, eyelids, and brows which seem to be drooping. It is recommended for showing weariness. 411-2

*Jihma*

Jihma is that which has slightly lowered lids and concealed and drooping pupils. It is cast slowly, obliquely, and slyly, and is employed for indicating jealousy, a secret, dullness, and sloth. 412-3

<sup>1</sup> *Ardhavyākṣita* seems to be the correct reading.

*Kuñcita*

The glance in which the eyelids and lashes are slightly bent and the pupils completely contracted is called Kuñcita. It indicates an undesired object, envy, and a dazzling object hard to look at. 414-5

*Vitarkita*

The glance in which the eyelids are turned up and the pupils full blown and moving downwards is called Vitarkita. It is mentioned as appropriate in conjecturing. 415-6

*Abhitapta*

The glance in which the pupils look indolently, and the eyelids are agitated on account of pain, as if confused, is called Abhitapta. It should be understood to indicate depression, a sudden attack, and anguish. 416-7

*Viṣaṇṇa*

The glance in which the outer corners droop, the two lids are distended and winking, and the pupils motionless, is Viṣaṇṇa. It indicates sorrow. 418

*Lalita*

The Lalita glance is sweet and smiling, with the outer corners of the eyes contracted. It is accompanied by movements of the brow and excites the passion of love. It is indicative of amorous dalliance. 419



*Ākekara*

[The glance] in which the eyelids and the corners are slightly contracted is Ākekara. It is half closed and has pupils which frequently turn in a direction away from the gaze of others. It is employed to indicate things difficult to look at [because of distance], and hidden objects. 420-1

*Vikośa*

The Vikośa [glance] is described by the learned as having wide open eyelids. [The glance is] full blown and unwinking, with restless pupils. It indicates pride of knowledge and wisdom, anger, and criticism. 421-2

*Vibhrānta*

The Vibhrānta glance is that which is restless and diffident in looking, and is wide open, with full-blown and agitated pupils. It is used to indicate agitation, speed, and hurry. 423-4

*Vipluta*

When the eyelids tremble, become motionless, and then droop down it is the Vipluta glance. It indicates distress, grief, etc., and also insanity and fickleness. 424-5

*Trasta*

The Trasta [glance] has tremulous and wide-open pupils and throbbing eyelids. It indicates fear. 425

*Madira*

The Madira [glance] is said to be of three kinds, fit to be employed in portraying the light (*taruṇa*), moderate (*madhyama*), and base (*adhama*) [types of] intoxication, with their respective characteristics. Of the three, excessive intoxication found in a low-class person is base [intoxication]. The Madira [glance] used in light intoxication has the outer corners of the eyes distended, eyes famished, and pupils rolling about. The Madira glance used in intoxication of the moderate type has slightly contracted lids, is somewhat unsteady in movement and has pupils which move about. The Madira [glance] used in the base type of intoxication moves in the lower part [of the eye], is turned down, with pupils slightly visible, much winking, and eyelids which cannot be opened even with effort. 426-30

These thirty-six glances have been enumerated by me as an illustration. The glances are innumerable, depending on the combination of the actions of the brows, pupils, and lids. Even the Creator [Brahmā] is not capable of describing each one of these glances. Hence, to make it easy to understand them, we shall presently deal with [the movements of] the brows, etc. 430-2

*EYEBROWS*

[The movements of] the eyebrows are explained by the learned as of seven kinds: Sahaja, Patita, Utkṣipta, Recita, Kuñcita, Bhrukuṭi, and Catura. 432-3

*Sahaja*

The normal position [of the eyebrows] is Sahaja. It is used to indicate a straightforward disposition. 433

*Patita*

[When the eyebrows] move down simultaneously or one by one, it is Patita. These two lowered brows indicate rejection, wonder, joy, anger, envy, disgust, laughter, and smelling. 434-5

*Utkṣipta*

Utkṣipta (raised) is what it signifies and refers [to the raising of the brows] one by one or together. It indicates the anger of women, deliberation, and natural seeing and hearing. This Utkṣipta movement should be used by experts to indicate the playful imitations of lovers (*līlā*) and manifestations of love (*helā*). 435-6

*Recita*

Delicately raising one eyebrow is Recita. It is used [only] in Nṛtta. 437

*(Nī)kuñcita*

When one or both of the eyebrows are delicately curved, that is Nikuñcita. It is employed in Moṭṭāyita, Kuṭṭamita, Vilāsa, and Kilakiñcita.<sup>1</sup> 437-8

<sup>1</sup> Cf. verses 66 ff. for definitions.

*Bhrukuṭi*

Raising both eyebrows [completely] from the roots is Bhrukuṭi. It is employed to indicate anger. 438

*Catura*

In Catura, both the eyebrows are slightly throbbing, elongated, and slow [in movement].<sup>1</sup> It indicates agreeable contact, love, and dalliance. 439

## EYELIDS

[Movements of] the eyelids are explained to be of nine kinds by [Śārṅgadeva], the son of Sodhala: Prasṛta, Kuñcita, Unmeṣita, Nimeṣita, Vivartita, Sphurita, Pihita, Vitāḍita, and Sama. 440-1

*Prasṛta*

Prasṛta [eyelids] are fully drawn apart. They indicate heroism, joy, and wonder. 441

*Kuñcita*

Kuñcita [eyelids] are slightly contracted. They indicate beautiful objects, etc., and pleasant things. 442

*Unmeṣita, Nimeṣita, and Vivartita*

Separating the eyelids is Unmeṣita; bringing them together is Nimeṣita; raising them is Vivartita. These three are employed to indicate anger. 442-3

<sup>1</sup> charming (*madhura*).

*Sphurita*

Sphurita are throbbing [eyelids]. They are to be employed to indicate jealousy. 443

*Pihita*

Pihita [eyelids] are very much constricted and joined together. They indicate sore eyes, sleep, swoon, and discomfort caused by excessive rain, heat, smoke, wind, and collyrium. 444

*Vicālita* (Vitāḍita)

Vicālita is the upper eyelid striking the lower. It is used to indicate a blow. Other [experts] say that it is opening the eyelids [to such an extent] as to make them invisible. 445

*Sama*

Sama [eyelids] are in the normal position. They are employed to indicate the natural position. 446

*PUPILS*

Now I shall describe the actions which differentiate the [movements of the] pupils. They are of two kinds: those which depend on themselves and those which depend on objects. 446-7

Wise men say that the actions of the pupils which depend upon themselves are nine in number: Bhramaṇa, Valana, Pāta, Calana, Praveśana, Vivartana, Samud-vṛtta, Niṣkrāma, and Prākṛta. 447-8

*Bhramaṇa*

Bhramaṇa is considered to be the circular movement of the pupils between the eyelids. 449

*Valana*

Valana is oblique movement. 449

*Pāta*

Pāta is downward movement. 449

*Calana*

Calana is said to be throbbing. 450

*Praveśana*

Praveśana is to be known as the drawing in [of the pupils] between the eyelids. 450

*Vivartana*

Vivartana is the Kaṭākṣa glance. 450

*Samudvṛtta*

Samudvṛtta is lifting up. 451

*Niṣkrāma*

Niṣkrāma is returning inwards [from Samudvṛtta]. 451

*Prākṛta*

Prākṛta is said to be the natural state. 451

Samudvṛtta, Valana, and Bhramaṇa express the Heroic (Vīra) and the Furious (Raudra) sentiments;

Pāta indicates the Pathetic (Karuṇa); Calana, the Fearful (Bhayānaka); Praveśana, the Odious (Bibhatsa) and the Comic (Hāsyā); Vivartana, the Erotic (Śṛṅgāra); Niṣkrāma, the Furious, the Fearful, and the Marvellous (Adbhuta); while Prākṛta indicates a disposition without excitement. 452-4

I shall now describe the eight kinds of actions of the pupils which depend on objects. Those well versed in the theory and practice [of dancing] speak of the following eight glances: Sama, Sāci, Anuvṛtta, Avalokita, Vilokita, Ullokita, Ālokita, and Pravilokita. 454-6

### *Sama*

Pupils which are in the centre [of the eye], agreeable in appearance, are called Sama. 456

### *Sāci*

Pupils which are within slanting eyelashes are called Sāci. 457

### *Anuvṛtta*

According to the sage [Bharata], Nirvarṇanā (careful observation) of objects is Anuvṛtta.

Nirvarṇanā is looking intently for a long time, prompted by the desire to see the object in its entirety. 457-8

### *Avalokita*

Avalokita is looking at something below. 458

*Vilokita*

Vilokita is said to be looking backwards. 459

*Ullokita*

Ullokita is looking at an object which is above. 459

*Ālokita*

Ālokita is said to be suddenly looking at an object. 460

*Pravilokita*

Pravilokita is explained by experts as looking at an object on the side. 460

Experts mention these as common to the Rasa-s and the Bhāva-s. 461

## C H E E K S

The cheeks are said to be of six kinds: Kuñcita, Kampita, Pūrṇa, Kṣāma, Phulla, and Sama. Their definitions are now given. 461-2

*Kuñcita*

Kuñcita is the contracted cheek with hair standing on end. It is employed to indicate cold, fever, and fear. 462

*Kampita*

Kampita is throbbing. It should be employed by the wise to indicate horripilation. 463



*Pūrṇa*

Pūrṇa is the raised cheek. It is employed to indicate pride and enthusiasm. 463

*Kṣāma*

Kṣāma should be known as the sunken cheek, to be employed by actors to indicate sorrow. 464

*Phulla*

Phulla means the full-blown cheek. It is employed to indicate great joy. 464

*Sama*

Sama is the cheek in the natural position. It is considered to indicate [normal] dispositions without excitement. 465

## N O S E

The nose is explained to be of six kinds by the writer Śārṅgadeva: Svābhāviki, Nata, Manda, Vikṛṣṭa, Vikūṇita, and Socchvāsa. 465-6

*Svābhāviki*

Svābhāviki is what the name indicates, [the natural position], free of exciting features. It should be used to indicate [such] dispositions. 466

*Nata*

The Nata nose is accepted to have nostrils which frequently contract and expand. It is used in sniffing and detecting mild and intermittent smells. 467

*Manda*

Manda is the nose which breathes gently in and out. It is prescribed for deliberation, anxiety, sorrow, and dejection. 468

*Vikṛṣṭa*

The Vikṛṣṭa [nose] has nostrils which are extremely dilated. It should be used to indicate anger, grief, fear, gasping, and smelling something highly fragrant. 469

*Vikūṇṭha*

Vikūṇṭha is the contracted [nose] which is employed in laughter, envy, and disgust. 470

*Socchvāsa*

Socchvāsa is the nose drawing in air. It indicates fragrance, and emotions such as dejection which cause deep breathing. 470-1

*B R E A T H*

Breathing, [comprising] inspiration and expiration, is said to be of nine kinds by Kohala: Svastha, Cala, Pravṛddha, Nirasta, Ullāsita, Vimukta, Vismīta, Skhalita, and Prasṛta. According to some others well versed in the art, breathing is of ten kinds: Sama, Bhrānta, Vilīna, Āndolita, Kampita, Stambhita, Ucchvāsa, Niḥśvāsa, Sūtkṛta, and Sītṛta. 471-4

*Svastha*

Svastha breathing is respiration in the natural way. It should be used to indicate normal functioning. So says the doubtless [Śārṅgadeva]. 474-5

*Cala*

Cala is breathing through the mouth. It [the breath] is warm, long-drawn, and audible. It is to be employed to indicate anxiety, depression, sorrow, and deliberation. 475-6

*Pravṛddha*

Pravṛddha is breathing out through the mouth in an increased measure, audibly. It indicates tuberculosis, etc. 476-7

*Nirasta*

Nirasta is declared to be the breath expelled once [a gasp], audibly. It is prescribed for indicating the sorrowful, the ill, and the tired. 477-8

*Ullāsita*

The Ullāsita breath is slowly and gently drawn in through the nose. It is used by experts to indicate agreeable smell and doubt. 478-9

*Vimukta*

Vimukta is stated to be the breath held for a long time and then let out. It is declared by the learned to be indicative of Yoga, meditation, and breath-control (*prāṇāyāma*). 479-80

*Vismita*

Vismita is [the breath] held with effort, owing to the mind wandering elsewhere. It indicates surprise, wonder, and construing the meaning of a passage. 480-1

*Skhalita*

Skhalita is stated to be breathing profusely out of sorrow. It indicates death, disease, and tottering. 481-2

*Prasṛta*

Prasṛta is breathing out of the mouth during sleep in long and audible [breaths]. 482

[Of the ten other kinds of breath], Sama is the same as Svastha; Bhrānta is the breath circulating inside; and the others bear self-explanatory names. Among them Sūtkṛta and Sitkṛta imitate the sound of the breath expelled and drawn in through the mouth, respectively. Sama is the natural. Bhrānta indicates the first meeting of lovers. Vilīna indicates swooning, and Āndolita is considered to indicate climbing a hill. Kampita is indicative of amorous enjoyment and Stambhita, of discharging missiles, etc. Ucchvāsa is used in smelling flowers and Niḥśvāsa : penitence, etc. Sūtkṛta is indicative of pain, etc., and Sitkṛta is employed to indicate cold, uneasiness, pressing with the nails, and passionate kissing of women. Let the wise understand other uses [for these] from daily life. 483-7

*LIPS*

The lips are said to be of six kinds: Vivartita, Kampita, Viṣṛta, Vinigūhita, Saṁdaṣṭaka, and Samudga. Others mention other [kinds of lips]: Udṛtta, Vikāsin, Āyata, and Recita. 488-9

*Vivartita*

Vivartita is closing the lips awry. It is prescribed in contempt, pain, envy, laughter, etc. 489-90

*Kampita*

Kampita (tremulous) is what it signifies. It indicates distress, fear, cold, [the muttering of] prayers, and disease. 490

*Visṛṣṭa*

Visṛṣṭa is protruding the lips. It is used to indicate adorning with lac-dye, etc., and the playful Vilāsa and Bibboka of women. So states Śārṅgadeva. 491

*Vinigūhita*

Vinigūhita is drawing the lips inside the mouth. It indicates something achieved with great effort, as well as the anger and spite of women when forcibly kissed by their lovers. 492

*Samdaṣṭaka*

Samdaṣṭaka is the lip bitten by the teeth. It is prescribed to indicate anger. 493

*Samudga*

Samudga is the pouting of the lips. It indicates blowing, compassion, kissing, and congratulating. 493-4

*Udvṛtta*

Udvṛtta [lips] result from drawing up the mouth, and indicates contempt and ridicule. 494

• *Vikāsin*

Vikāsin reveals the upper teeth slightly, and is prescribed in smiling. 495

*Āyata*

Āyata is [the mouth] stretched along the upper lip. It is indicative of smiling. 495

*Recita*

Recita is moving the lip sidewise, and is indicative of dalliance. 496

## T E E T H

We shall [now] describe the actions of the teeth for establishing the definitions [of the various positions] of the teeth. The actions of the teeth are said to be eight: Kuṭṭana, Khaṇḍana, Chinna, Cukkita, Grahaṇa, Sama, Daṣṭa, and Niṣkarṣaṇa. 496-7

*Kuṭṭana*

Kuṭṭana is chattering [of the teeth]. It indicates cold, illness, fear, and old age. 498

*Khaṇḍana*

Khaṇḍana is accepted to be the frequent touching and separating of the teeth. It is used in muttering prayers, reading, speaking, and eating. 498-9

*Chinna*

Chinna is tightly closing the teeth. It is known to indicate weeping, fear, cold, illness, biting the betel roll, taking exercises, etc. 499-500

*Cukkita*

Cukkita is keeping the two rows of teeth wide apart. It is used in yawning, etc. 500

*Grahaṇa*

Grahaṇa is holding a piece of grass or a finger<sup>1</sup> between the teeth. It indicates fear. 501

*Sama*

Sama is slight contact [of the teeth]. It is accepted as indicating the natural state. 501

*Daṣṭa*

Daṣṭa is biting the lower lip with the teeth. It is said to indicate anger. 502

*Niṣkarṣaṇa*

Niṣkarṣaṇa is thrusting forward [the teeth]. It is to be used in showing the crying of monkeys. 502

## T O N G U E

The [actions of the] tongue are of six kinds: Ṛjvi, Śṛkkānuga, Vakra, Unnata, Lola, and Lehini. 503

*Ṛjvi*

Among them, Ṛjvi is [the tongue] stretched out in the open mouth. It shows fatigue and the thirst of wild beasts. 503-4

<sup>1</sup> The text should be *aṅguleḥ*.

*Sṛkkānuga*

Sṛkkānuga is licking the corner of the mouth. It depicts great anger and the eating of delicious food. 504

*Vakra*

Vakra is [the tongue] with the tip turned up in a gaping mouth. It portrays the Maṇ-Lion (*narahari*). 505

*Unnata*

Unnata is [the tongue] in the wide-open mouth, [fully turned up] as the name indicates. It is used in yawning and in looking at things inside the mouth. 505

*Lola*

Lola is [the tongue] moving inside a gaping mouth. It is used in representing an ogre (*Vetāla*). 506

*Lehini*

Lehini is considered by the sage [Bhāratata] to be the tongue licking the teeth and lips. 506

## CHIN

[The positions of] the chin are indicated by the actions of the tongue, the lips, and the teeth; hence they are [already] almost defined. Yet, for convenience, I shall describe them in accordance with usage. 507

[The positions of] the chin are eight in number: Vyādīrṇa, Śvasita, Vakra, Saṁhata, Calasaṁhata, Sphurita, Calita, and Lola. 508



*Vyādirṇa*

Vyādirṇa is [the chin] far out [of position]. It is declared to indicate yawning, laziness, etc. 509

*Śvasita*

Śvasita is [the chin] which has slipped down an Aṅgula. It is used in looking with wonder. 509

*Vakra*

Vakra is [the chin] pushed to the side. It is prescribed in indicating possession by the spirits of planets [Epilepsy?]. 510

*Samhata*

Samhata is motionless, with closed mouth. It is to be used in silence. 510

*Calasamhata* .

Calasamhata is [the chin] in movement while the lips are closed. It is used in kissing women.<sup>1</sup> 511

*Sphurita*

Sphurita is the trembling [chin]. It is used in fear and in fever with cold fits. 511

*Calita*

Calita is the closing up and falling apart [of the jaws]. It is used to indicate paralyzed speech, excitement, and anger. 512

<sup>1</sup> The text should be *nāricumbane*.

*Lola*

Lola is movement to and fro, obliquely. It is used in chewing and in mere deliberation. 512

*M O U T H*

The learned speak of six kinds of mouths: Vyābhugna, Bhugna, Udvāhi, Vidhuta, Vivṛta, and Vinivṛta. 513

*Vyābhugna*

Vyābhugna is the somewhat elongated mouth. Ancient scholars prescribe it for depicting despondency, anxiety, thought, etc. 514

*Bhugna*

Bhugna is the mouth pulled down. It is used in indicating bashfulness and the natural disposition of ascetics. 515

*Udvāhi*

Udvāhi is the turned-up [mouth]. It is used in playfulness, pride, indifference, and in walking. 515

*Vidhuta*

Vidhuta is [the mouth] lengthened obliquely. It is used in prohibition and denial. 516

*Vivṛta*

Vivṛta is [the mouth] with the lips open. It is used to indicate merriment, sorrow, fear, etc. 516

*Viniṛtta*

Viniṛtta is [the mouth] pushed aside. It indicates anger, jealousy, and envy. 517

*HEELS*

Utkṣipta (raised), Patita (fallen), Utkṣipta-patita (raised and fallen), Antargata (turned inwards), Bahir-gata (turned outwards), Mithoyukta (joined together), Viyukta (separated), and Aṅgulisāṅgata (meeting the toes) are the eight positions of the heel seen in the movements (Cārī-s) and postures (Sthāna-s) of the foot. 517-8

*ANKLES*

The [positions of the] ankles are of five kinds in the postures (Sthānaka-s), etc.: Anguṣṭhasaṁśliṣṭa (touching the big toe), Antaryāta (turned inwards), Bahirmukha (turned outwards), Mithoyukta (joined together), and Viyukta (separated). 519

*FINGERS*

The fingers of the hand are of seven kinds: Saṁyuta (joined together), Viyuta (separated), Vakra (crooked), Valita (curved), Patita (fallen), Kuñcanmūla (bent at the roots), and Prasṛta (spread out). 520

The characteristics of these various [positions of the] heels, etc., are known from their names. 521

*TOES*

The toes of the feet are of five kinds: Adhaḥkṣipta, Utkṣipta, Kuñcita, Prasārita, and Saṁlagna. 521-2

*Adhaḥkṣipta*

Adhaḥkṣipta is pressing down [the toes] repeatedly. It is used in haughty indifference and amorous agitation (Bibboka and Kilakiñcita). 522

*Utkṣipta*

Utkṣipta is raising [the toes] repeatedly. It indicates the extreme bashfulness of a newly married girl. 523

*Kuñcita*

Kuñcita is the contracted. It indicates cold, fainting, fear, and possession by evil planets. 523

*Prasārita*

Prasārita is the straight and motionless. It is used in stupefaction, sleep, and the cracking of limbs. 524

These differences should also be known by experts in dancing to exist for the big toe. 524

*Samlagna*

Samlagna are the toes close together along with the big toe. It is used in rubbing. 525

## SOLES

The soles of the feet are known to be of six kinds: Patitāgra (with the forepart fallen), Uddhṛtāgra (with the forepart raised), Bhūmilagna (touching the ground), Uddhṛta (raised from the ground), Kuñcanmadhya (with the arch bent), and Tiraścina (transverse). 525-6

## FACIAL COLOUR

The colour of the face explains the states of the mind which are expressions of the Rasa-s; hence, as it is useful in the [expression of the] Rasa-s, the colour of the face is now described. 526-7

The colour of the face is of four kinds: Svābhāvika (natural), Prasanna (clear), Rakta (red), and Śyāma (dark). 527-8

*Svābhāvika*

Of these, Svābhāvika (natural) is true to its name, and is prescribed by the wise for portraying unexcited moods. 528

*Prasanna*

Prasanna is the clear [colour] which is used in the Comic (Hāsyā), Erotic (Śṛṅgāra), and Marvellous (Adbhuta) Rasa-s. 529

*Rakta*

Rakta is the red [colour]. It is used in the Pathetic (Karuṇā), Furious (Raudra), Heroic (Vīra), and Marvellous (Adbhuta) Rasa-s. 529

*Śyāma*

Śyāma (dark) is true to its name. It is used in the Odious (Bībhatsa) and Fearful (Bhayānaka) Rasa-s. 530

The [gestures of the] various limbs shine all the more when combined with the [proper] colour of the

face just as the quarters shine with the moon [at night]. 530

Just as in the representation of the Rasa-s and the Bhāva-s, the movements of the eyes change every second, so also the [proper] colour of the face should be produced to suit each Rasa. 531

### POSITIONS OF THE HANDS

Bharata considers the positions of the hands to be of three kinds: Uttāna (facing upwards), Adhomukha (facing downwards), and Pārśvagata (turned to the side). Others speak of Agraga (going forwards) and Adhas-tala (palm facing down), in addition to the three mentioned above. Bhaṭṭanāyaka, who says that Agraga is included in Uttāna and Adhomukha in Adhas-tala, also accepts only three [kinds of hand positions]. Śārṅga-deva, who knows the theory and practice [of the art], gives fifteen positions as follows: Uttāna (palm facing upwards), Adhas-tala (palm facing downwards), Pārśva-gata (palm facing sideways), Agratastala (palm facing forwards), Svasammukhata (palm facing oneself); Ūrdhvamukha (pointing upwards), Adhavadana (pointing downwards), Parāṇmukha (pointing outwards), Sammukha (pointing towards oneself), Pārśvatomukha (pointing to the side); Ūrdhvaga (moving up), Adhoga (moving down), Pārśvagata (moving to the side), Agraga (moving forwards), and Sammukhāgata (moving towards oneself). 532-7

## MOVEMENTS OF THE HANDS

The Karaṇa of the hand is considered to be a particular action performed in the representation of a hand pose, which [action] is not indispensable for adopting [that pose]. 537-8

Āveṣṭita, Udveṣṭita, Vyāvartita, and Parivartita—these are the four kinds [of Karaṇa-s of the hand] accepted by the learned. 538-9

When the fingers [which are straight to start with] are bent in sequence beginning with the forefinger, while the hand is brought from [its own] side up to the chest, the palm being turned towards the body, then that Karaṇa of the hand is called Āveṣṭita by scholars. 539-40

But the movement away from the palm [i.e., the straightening] of the [bent] fingers [beginning with the forefinger] in their respective order, along with [the movement of] the hand [away] from the chest [to the side] is called Udveṣṭita [i.e., the reverse of Āveṣṭita].

541

Vyāvartita should be done for the hand in the same manner as for Āveṣṭita, and the Karaṇa [named] Parivartita is explained by Udveṣṭita. But these two Karaṇa-s are made with the fingers beginning with the little finger. 542-3

## ACTIONS OF THE HANDS

The actions of the hands have been spoken of by experts on dancing as twenty in number, their functions

being indicated by the names themselves: Dhūnana (shaking), Śleṣa (contact), Viśleṣa (separation), Kṣepa (throwing out), Rakṣaṇa (protecting), Mokṣaṇa (releasing), Parigraha (accepting), Nigraha (restraining), Utkrṣṭa (raising up), Ākrṣṭa (drawing inwards), Vikrṣṭa (drawing outwards), Tāḍana (beating), Tolana (weighing),<sup>1</sup> Cheda (cutting), Bheda (splitting), Sphoṭana (bursting), Moṭana (snapping), Visarjana (dismissing), Āhvāna (beckoning), and Tarjana (threatening). 543-5

#### PLACES FOR THE HANDS

The two sides, in front, behind, above, below, the head, the forehead, the ear, the shoulders, the chest, the navel, above the hips, and the two thighs—these are the fourteen places for the hands. 546-7

— — —

<sup>1</sup> *Nāṭya Śāstra*, IX. 166. Todana=Tāḍana. *Samgītasudhākara* gives Lolana.



## NṚTTAKARAṆA-S

I bow to that Lord who is stable, beyond the range of the senses, the destroyer of the god of love, who dances on the stage of heaven and earth performing different Karaṇa-s and Aṅgahāra-s. 547-8

A beautiful action of the hand, the foot, etc., [in combination], which is in keeping with the Rasa, is called Karaṇa or Nṛttakaraṇa, just as the terms Bhīma and Bhīmasena are applied to the same person. 548-9

We give [below] the different types of Karaṇa-s, as given by Bharata: 1. Talapuṣpapuṭa, 2. Līna, 3. Vartita, 4. Valitoru, 5. Maṇḍalasvastika, 6. Vakṣaḥ-svastika, 7. Ākṣiptarecita, 8. Ardhasvastika, 9. Diksvastika, 10. Prṣṭhasvastika, 11. Svastika, 12. Añcita, 13. Apavidhha, 14. Samanakha, 15. Unmatta, 16. Svas-tikarecita, 17. Nikuṭṭaka, 18. Ardhanikuṭṭaka, 19. Kaṭi-chinna, 20. Kaṭisama, 21. Bhujaṅgatrāsita, 22. Alāta, 23. Vikṣiptākṣiptaka, 24. Nikuñcita, 25. Ghūrṇita, 26. Ūrdhvajānu, 27. Ardharecita, 28. Mattalli, 29. Ardha-mattalli, 30. Recakanikuṭṭaka, 31. Lalita, 32. Valita, 33. Daṇḍapakṣa, 34. Pādāpavidhaka, 35. Nūpura, 36. Bhramara, 37. Chinna, 38. Bhujaṅgatrastarecita,

39. Bhujaṅgāñcita, 40. Daṇḍarecita, 41. Catura,  
 42. Kaṭibhrānta, 43. Vyamsita, 44. Krānta, 45. Vaiśā-  
 kharecita, 46. Vṛścika, 47. Vṛścikanikuṭṭaka, 48. Vṛsci-  
 karecita, 49. Latāvṛścika, 50. Ākṣipta, 51. Argala,  
 52. Talavilāsita, 53. Lalāṭatilaka, 54. Pārśvanikuṭṭaka,  
 55. Cakramaṇḍala, 56. Uromaṇḍala, 57. Āvarta,  
 58. Kuñcita, 59. Ḍolapādaka, 60. Vivṛtta, 61. Vinivṛtta,  
 62. Pārśvakrānta, 63. Niśumbhita, 64. Vidyudbhrānta,  
 65. Atikrānta, 66. Vikṣipta, 67. Vivartita, 68. Gajavikrī-  
 ḍita, 69. Gaṇḍasūci, 70. Garuḍapluta, 71. Talasaṃ-  
 sphoṭita, 72. Pārśvajānu, 73. Gṛdhrāvalīnaka, 74. Sūci,  
 75. Ardhasūci, 76. Sūcividdha, 77. Hariṇapluta, 78. Pari-  
 vrṛtta, 79. Daṇḍapāda, 80. Mayūralalita, 81. Preṅkho-  
 lita, 82. Saṃnata, 83. Sarpita, 84. Karihastaka,  
 85. Prasarpita, 86. Apakrānta, 87. Nitamba, 88. Skhalita,  
 89. Siṃhavikrīḍita, 90. Siṃhākarsita, 91. Avahitthaka,  
 92. Niveśaka, 93. Eḍakākriḍa, 94. Janita, 95. Upaṣṭa,  
 96. Talasaṅghaṭṭita, 97. Udvṛtta, 98. Viṣṇukrānta,  
 99. Lolita, 100. Madaskhalita, 101. Śumbhrānta,  
 102. Viṣkambha, 103. Udghaṭṭita, 104. Śakaṭāśya,  
 105. Ūrūdvṛtta, 106. Vṛṣabhakriḍita, 107. Nāgāpa-  
 sarpita, 108. Gaṅgāvatarāṇa. 550-64

Thus one hundred and eight Karaṇa-s have been pointed out by me. As the combinations of Cārī-s (steps) and Sthānaka-s (postures) are innumerable, the Karaṇa-s are also innumerable. But [only] these [108 Karaṇa-s] are used in the Aṅgahāra-s.<sup>1</sup>

564-6

<sup>1</sup> An Aṅgahāra is a combination of several Karaṇa-s.

Now I shall state the definitions of these [Karaṇa-s] as accepted by those who know the things defined. 566

Normally, at the beginning of the dance, the feet must have the Sama pose, the hands must have the Latākara pose, and the body must be in the Caturaśra pose. Only the other particular features are stated. 567

### *Talapuṣpapuṭa* (Handful of flowers)

While the right foot is extended through the Adhyardhikā Cārī, the two hands are brought to the right side with the Vyāvartana movement and then brought with the Parivartana movement to the left side of the waist which is bent in the Sannata position. [Then] the hands take the Puṣpapuṭa pose near the left breast, the feet being in the Agratalasaṃcara pose. That is Talapuṣpapuṭa. 568-70

If this Karaṇa comes after another Karaṇa, then the hand movements must accord with [the pose] which is given up or taken up in the particular [Karaṇa which precedes]. This [Karaṇa] is used in offering handfuls of flowers and in indicating bashfulness. 570-1

### *Līna* (Attached)

After making the Ūrdhvamaṇḍala movement, the hands take the Añjali pose on the chest. The humps of the shoulders are raised [as] in Nihañcita in which the neck is bent down. That Karaṇa is Līna. It is to be used by the learned in indicating the entreaties of a lover. 572-3

*Vartita* (Inverted)

After having crossed the hands at the wrists [in Svastika] on the chest, with [the hands] facing the body and separated from each other,<sup>1</sup> the Vyāvṛtta and Parivartita movements should be made, and [the hands] made to fall, palms upwards on the thigh. This is accepted to be Vartita. 573-4

It is employed to indicate jealousy, if two Patāka hands are made to fall. Those [i.e., the same Patāka] hands with the palms turned down or with palms rubbed, indicate anger. Here [in this Karaṇa], there can be other hand poses like Śukatuṇḍa also in accordance with [different] applications. 575-6

*Valitoru* (Thighs turned)

The hands make the Vyāvṛtta and Parivartita movements simultaneously from the chest, and with the Ākṣiptā Cārī are brought together through the Parivartana movement and placed there [i.e., on the chest] adopting the Śukatuṇḍa pose with the palms facing down. [Then] a posture (Sthāna) is adopted with the Baddhā Cārī. This is called Valitoru. It is used to indicate the bashfulness of a shy and artless girl (Mugdhā). So says Śārṅgadeva. 576-8

*Maṇḍalasvastika*

Having adopted the Caturaśra pose of the hands, while performing the Vicyavā Cārī, the hands should make the Ūrdhvamaṇḍala gesture preceded by the

<sup>1</sup> The text should be *asliṣṭau*.

Udveṣṭita movement, and then make the Svastika. Here the posture (Sthāna) to be used is Maṇḍala. This is Maṇḍalasvastika, employed in looking at well-known meanings. 579-80

*Vakṣaḥsvastika* (Crossed at the Chest)

After placing the two hands at the chest in the Caturaśra pose, the Recita gesture [of the hands] is made. Then they are brought with the Vyāvartita movement to the chest which is bent forward (Ābhugna), and crossed in Svastika. The legs also form a Svastika. That is accepted to be Vakṣaḥsvastika. To indicate bashfulness and sympathy, this [Karaṇa] is used with the shoulders not bent. 581-2

*Ākṣiptarecita* (Cast off)

The two hands placed near the heart make a Vyāvṛtta movement high up and are thrown down at the sides. Then one hand [the left hand] in the Haṃsapakṣa pose is brought with a quick circular movement, pointing downwards, to the chest. The other [hand] in a similar manner [i.e., in the Haṃsapakṣa pose, with a quick circular movement, pointing downwards] is taken away [from the body]. The feet are in the Añcita and Sūcī poses. That is Ākṣiptarecita. In Abhinaya, a series of giving and receiving is indicated by this [Karaṇa]. 583-5

*Ardhasvastika* (Half-Cross)

The right hand makes the Karihasta gesture and the left hand takes the Khaṭakāmukha pose at the chest. The feet make the Svastika. That is Ardhasvastika.

Others took it that in the place of Karihasta, Pakṣavañcita, Pakṣapradhyotaka or Ardhaçandra is to be made at the sides. 585-7

*Diksvastika* (Crossed in different directions)

When the Svastika [Karaṇa] moves in all directions, turning sideways, to the front, and the back [in the course of a single circular movement], while the hands and feet make the Recita movement, that is called Diksvastika. It was employed by the ancients to indicate the movement of the body while singing. This kind of Svastika action is possible in other varieties of Svastika also. 587-9

*Prṣṭhasvastika* (Crossed behind)

While the two arms are extended with the Udveṣṭita movement, the Apakrāntā Cārī is performed. Then as the Apaveṣṭita movement is being performed, the other foot makes the Recita movement and Sūcī Cārī. Then a Svastika is formed with the feet and hands. That is Prṣṭhasvastika. It is employed by those who know the principles of dancing to indicate negation, impetuosity, pursuing of enemies, and talking; according to some others, to indicate movement in fighting. 589-92

*Svastika* (Crossed)

After extending the hands with the Udveṣṭita movement, while a Vyāvarta movement is being performed, a jump is made and then a Svastika formed simultaneously with the hands and feet. That is

Svastika. It should be used by the learned to indicate the afore-mentioned things [i.e., with reference to Prṣṭhasvastika]. 592-8

*Añcita* (Bent)

When, with the Vyāvṛtta and Parivartita movements, the hand in the Karihasta pose is brought near the nose and takes the Alapadma pose, then there is Añcita. It is to be used in [explaining passages] indicating great elation about one's own superiority. 594-5

*Apavidhha* (Thrown off)

Standing with the Caturaśra pose of the hands, the right hand is extended with the Vyāvarta movement while the Ākṣiptā Cārī is [simultaneously] performed. Then the [same] right hand, adopting the Śukatuṇḍa pose, is made to fall on the right thigh. The left hand is held at the chest in the Khaṭakāmukha pose. That is Apavidhha. The son of Soḍhala [Śārṅgadeva] says that it is to be used to indicate anger and jealousy. 595-7

*Samanakha* (Level nails)

The body is in the natural position, the feet touching each other with the toes placed level on the ground. The hands are in the Latā pose. This is Samanakha. It is used in the first entrance [of the dancer]. 598

*Unmatta* (Frenzied)

Performing the Āviddhā Cārī, the feet are kept in the Añcita pose. The hands perform the Recita

gesture, one by one. That is called Unmatta. It is used in indicating pride born of wealth, etc. 599

### *Svastikarecita*

After taking the Caturaśra pose, the hands adopt the Hamsapakṣa pose and make a quick circular movement. Then with the Vyāvṛtta and Parivartana movements they are brought down and up from the region of the head. Making the Āviddhavakra gesture, they form a Svastika at the chest. Then they are separated and make the Pakṣavañcita and Pakṣapradhyotaka gestures [at the hips]. A Cārī which is suitable to this [action] is made, ending in the Avahitthaka posture (Sthāna). This is Svastikarecita. It is employed in portraying Nṛtta dancing and indicating great joy. 600-3

### *Nikuṭṭaka* (Rising and falling)

Assuming the Maṇḍala posture and standing with the Caturaśra [gesture], the right hand is brought with an Udveṣṭita movement to the hump of the [right] shoulder. With a falling and rising movement of the little finger and the next finger, the Alapadma pose is made, while the right foot does the Udghaṭṭita action. Then bringing [the hand]<sup>1</sup> to make the Āviddhavakra gesture, the Caturaśra pose of the hand is taken. In the same way, the movements are made with the left hand and foot. This is

<sup>1</sup> Abhinavagupta takes it as the left hand.



Nikuṭṭaka. It is used while dancing sentences indicating self-adulation. 603-6

### *Ardhanikuṭṭaka*

The same performed to one side is Ardhanikuṭṭaka. It is used in the case [of self-adulation] when the words are not fully developed. 607

### *Kaṭichinna* (Turned waist)

Having done the Bhramarī Cārī [on either side], the Maṇḍala posture is taken. One hip takes the Chinna position while the hand is placed on the shoulder in the Pallava gesture. The same is done on the other side. When this is repeated three or four times, it is Kaṭichinna. It is used to express wonder. 608-9

### *Kaṭisama* (Level waist)

After performing the Ākṣiptā and Apakrāntā Cārī-s and having formed a Svastika with the two hands, the right hand is placed on the navel in the Khāṭakāmukha pose, and the other [hand] on the waist in the Ardhaçandra pose. That side [i.e., the left side] is in the Nata pose, and the other [waist] is raised [as it would be in the Udvāhita pose of the chest]. This is repeated on the other side. When accompanied by the Vaiṣṇava posture, this is called Kaṭisama. It is used by the stage-manager (Sūtra-dhāra) at the consecration of the Jarjara. 610-2

*Bhujāṅgaṭrāsita* (Frightened by Serpent)

After performing the *Bhujāṅgaṭrāsita* *Cārī* and throwing up the foot in the *Kuñcita* position, make a movement in such a way that the thighs, waist, and knees make a triangle. With the *Vyāvṛtta* and *Parivartita* movements, one hand takes the *Ḍola* pose and the other [hand] the *Khaṭakāmukha* pose. This is considered to be *Bhujāṅgaṭrāsita*, true to its name [frightened by serpent].

613-4

*Alāta* (Fire-brand)

The *Alāta Cārī* [is to be performed with the right foot]. The right hand does the *Nitamba* gesture and adopts the *Caturaśra* pose. The *Ūrdhvajānu Cārī* is to be performed with the left foot. In the same way if it is repeated for the other side, that is *Alāta*. It is recommended for graceful *Nṛtta*.

615-6

*Vikṣiptākṣiptaka* (Thrown out and in)

While one hand performs the *Vyāvarta* movement, that foot [i.e., on the same side] is stretched out (*Vikṣepa*). The other hand is in the *Caturaśra* pose. Then the former hand makes the *Parivartana* movement and the foot is brought back (*Ākṣepa*). In the same way it is repeated for the other side. This is *Vikṣiptākṣiptaka*, and is used to indicate going and coming.

616-8

Those who know the principles of dancing do not accept this application [for the movement]. The hand poses for *Abhinaya* are prescribed principally

where the meaning of sentences has to be portrayed [through dancing]. This is mainly for Nṛtta. Therefore this type of Karaṇa is to be used in between pieces of Abhinaya, in moving about, in the course of Cārī-s and Sthānaka-s which are used while fighting is being shown, and in indicating arrangements for keeping time (Tāla). 618-21

### *Nikuñcita* (Bent)

After performing [the foot movement of the] Vṛścika Karaṇa, the hand on the same side in the Arāla pose is placed on the side of the head. The other hand [also] in the Arāla pose is brought from the region of the nose to the chest. This is called Nikuñcita. It is employed to indicate jumping up, eagerness, doubt, etc. According to others, Patāka and Sūcyāsya hands are to be placed at the tip of the nose in this [Karaṇa]. 621-3

### *Ghūrṇita* (Reeling)

While the [right] hand is raised in the Vyāvartana movement and lowered in the Parivartana movement, [thus] moving about away from the sides, Jaṅghā-svastika is made [i.e., the legs are crossed below the knee]. Then the Apakrāntā Cārī is made [with the left foot] and the foot kept in that direction. The left hand is in the Ḍola pose. This Karaṇa is called Ghūrṇita. 624-5

### *Ūrdhvajānu* (Raised knees)

While the foot has the Kuñcita pose and the Ūrdhvajānu Cārī is being performed, the hand on

that side [i.e., the side of the raised knee] has the Alapadma or Arāla pose, pointing upwards. The Pakṣavañcitaka pose is made above the knee held on a level with the breast. The other [hand] is in the Khaṭakāmukha pose at the chest. That is called Ūrdhvajānu. 626-7

*Ardharecita* (Half whirl)

Standing in the Maṇḍala Sthānaka, one hand in the Khaṭakāmukha pose is held at the chest. [The other hand] moves away and then adopts the Sūcīmu-kha pose near it [the chest]. The foot makes the Udghaṭṭita movement and the side is in Sannata. It is used to indicate running away and also coarse or ill-conceived actions. 628-9

*Mattalli* (Intoxicated reeling)

Having made a Svastika with the ankles, the feet move away and simultaneously the hands make the Udveṣṭana and Apaveṣṭana movements repeatedly. That is Mattalli, and is used to indicate intoxication. 630-1

*Ardhamattalli* (Semi-intoxicated reeling)

The right hand makes movements (Vartanā-s) like Nitamba and Keśabandha. The feet are moved away in agitation. The left hand makes a partial Recita movement. Then that is Ardhamattalli. It is used to indicate slight intoxication. 631-2

*Recakanikuṭṭaka*

The right hand makes the Recita movement. That [i.e., the right] foot makes the Udghaṭṭita movement. The left hand is in the Ḍola pose. That is Recakanikuṭṭaka. 633

*Lalita* (Graceful)

[The right hand] is as stated above [making the Nitamba, Keśabandha, and other Vartanā-s]. The other [hand] makes the Karihasta gesture. The foot makes the Udghaṭṭita movement. This is likewise repeated on the other side. That is Lalita and it is used to indicate graceful dancing. 634

*Valita* (Turned round)

The hand in the pose called Sūcīmukha is moved away from the chest. The foot in the Sūcī pose is also moved away. Then the Bhramarī Cārī is performed. If in turn this is done on both sides, it is Valita. It is used to indicate the graceful. 635-6

*Daṇḍapakṣa* (Stiffened side)

First the Ūrdhvajānu Cārī is performed. The hands make the Latā gesture. One of them is then placed above the knee which is raised. In the same way, it is repeated on the other side. That is called Daṇḍapakṣa. 636-7

*Pādāpaviddhaka* (Foot-piercing)

The two hands pointing outwards are placed in the region of the navel in the Khaṭākāmukha pose.

One foot in the Sūcī pose is brought in contact with the other and the Apakrāntā Cārī is performed [with the Sūcī foot]. Then the same is repeated with the other foot. This is Pādāpaviddhaka. 638-9

### *Nūpura* (Anklet)

After doing the Bhramarī Cārī, the Nūpurapādikā Cārī is performed with one foot. The hand on the same side makes the Recita movement. The other hand is in the Latā pose. This is known as Nūpura. 639-40

### *Bhramara* (Bee)

The foot is as in the Ākṣiptā Cārī and simultaneously the Udveṣṭita movement is made with the hand. The lower part of the spine is curved around and the feet form a Svastika. Then the same is repeated on the other side. Simultaneously the hands make the Ulbaṇa gesture. This is Bhramara, and is to be used in moving about haughtily. 641-2

### *Chinna* (Turned)

The hands in the Alapadma pose are placed at [each] side of the hips in sequence while the waist takes the Chinna position. The body takes the Vaiśākha posture. That is called Chinna. It is to be used in checking the time measurement (Tāla) and in resting the limbs. 643-4

*Bhujāṅgatrastarecita* (Reeling with serpent fright)

The Bhujāṅgatrāsītā Cārī is performed. Then the Recita gesture is made with the hands which are [brought] to the left side. That is Bhujāṅgatrastarecita.

644-5

*Bhujāṅgāñcita* (Serpent touch)

If the above-mentioned [Bhujāṅgatrāsītā] Cārī is performed with the right foot and the right hand makes the Recita movement, the other hand being kept in the Latā posture, then it is Bhujāṅgāñcita. 645-6

*Daṇḍarecita*

If the Daṇḍapādā Cārī is performed and the hands make the Daṇḍapaksa gesture, then it is Daṇḍarecita, used in merry dance. Others explain its use in vigorous movement.

646-7

*Catura*

Of the two hands kept near the chest, the left takes the Alapallava pose and the right, the Catura pose. One foot makes the Udghaṭṭita movement. This is Catura [Karaṇa] and is employed to indicate the actions of the Vidūṣaka producing wonder. 648-9

*Kaṭibhrānta* (Waist moved around)

After assuming the Sūcī pose, the left foot moves away quickly. The right foot is placed on that [left] side and simultaneously the Recaka movement is made with the hips. [Or] the Bhūamarī Cārī is

performed and the Vyāvṛtta and Parivartita movements made with the hands, making the Caturaśra gesture at the end. Then it is Kaṭibhrānta. Its use is recommended by the doubtless [Śārṅgadeva] to fill up the pauses in music (Yati-s) in between the Tāla-s, and also in moving about. 649-52

*Vyaṃsita* (Beguiled)

One hand is spread out below by an Udveṣṭita movement; the other hand is stretched out above in the same way [by an Udveṣṭita movement] and is brought back to the region of the chest. Then one hand makes the Recita gesture, palm facing up and the other makes the Recita, facing down. The posture is that of Ālīḍha Sthānaka. This is called Vyaṃsita. It is to be employed to indicate the movement of great monkeys like Hanumān. 652-4

*Krānta* (Extended)

Performing the Atikrāntā Cārī, the foot that comes down is bent. Simultaneously the hand is extended with the Vyāvartita movement. Then bringing it back with the Parivartana movement, the Khaṭakā-mukha pose is taken at the chest. The same is repeated on the other side. This is called Krānta. The teachers speak about its use in vigorous movement. 655-7

*Vaiśākharecita*

Where Recaka movements are made with the hands, the feet, the waist, and the neck, and the standing



posture is Vaiśākha Sthānaka, that should be known as Vaiśākharecita by scholars. 657-8

### *Vṛścika* (Scorpion)

Where the hands make the Karihasta gesture, and the feet are kept at the back like the tail of a scorpion, the back being bent [back] far, that is known as Vṛścika. This is employed to indicate the aerial movement of Airāvaṇa and others. 658-9

### *Vṛścikakuṭṭita* (Vṛścikanikuṭṭaka)

The feet take the pose of Vṛścika [as explained above] and the hands in Alapadma pose are moved up and down [Nikuṭṭita movement],<sup>1</sup> one after the other, at the shoulders. Then it is Vṛścikakuṭṭita. It is employed to indicate wonder, desire for aerial movement, etc. 660-1

### *Vṛścikarecita*

Where the feet are in the pose of Vṛścika and Svastika hands are separated and perform the Recita gesture, that is Vṛścikarecita. It is used for journeying in the air. 661-2

### *Latāvṛścika* (Creeper-scorpion)

Where the feet are in the pose of Vṛścika and the left hand takes the Latā pose, that is Latāvṛścika. It

<sup>1</sup> *Unnamanam vinamanam syād aṅgasya Nikuṭṭanam*. Kohala quoted by Abhinavagupta, IV. 70.

is to be employed by the learned in jumping up in the sky. 662-3

### *Ākṣipta*

Where the Ākṣiptā Cārī is performed, and the hand in Khaṭakāmukha or Catura pose is brought in, [the side being slightly bent], that is Ākṣipta [Karaṇa]. It is considered [applicable] in the movement of the Vidūṣaka. 663-4

### *Argala* (Impediment)

The right foot is kept on the side of the little toe of the left foot at a distance of two and a half spans (Tāla), with the shank stiff. Simultaneously the right arm is kept stiff at the left side, assuming the Alapallava pose with the tip slightly spread out. Then it is Argala. It is advocated by Śārṅgadeva in [indicating the ] movement of Aṅgada [the Monkey-lord], etc. 664-6

### *Talavilāsita*

One foot is raised high and stretched at the side with the toes and the balls turned up and its tip in contact with the hand in the Patāka pose. Similarly, in turn, it is repeated on the other side. That is called Talavilāsita and is used in the case of the stage-manager (Sūtradhāra), etc. 667-8

### *Lalāṭatilaka* (Tilaka on forehead)

If the big toe of the foot in the pose of the Vṛścika Karana makes a Tilaka mark on the forehead, then

it is Lalāṭatīlaka. It is considered to indicate the movement of celestial beings (Vidyādhara-s). 668-9

### *Pārśvanikuṭṭaka*

One of the hands crossed in Svastika is brought to the side, pointing upwards and does the Nikuṭṭita movement, while the other points downwards. The feet, in the same way, make the Nikuṭṭita movement. This is Pārśvanikuṭṭaka, and is employed in repeatedly showing or moving about. 669-70

### *Cakramaṇḍala* (Wheel-spin)

After performing the Aḍḍitā Cārī, whirl around like a wheel, keeping the arms in the Ḍola pose and bending the body inwards. This is called Cakramaṇḍala. It is employed in worshipping gods and in vigorous movement. 671-2

### *Uromaṇḍala*

Where the Baddhā and Sthitāvartā Cārī-s are performed, while the hands make the Uromaṇḍala gesture, that is said to be Uromaṇḍala by [Śārṅgadeva], the favourite of Śiva. 672-3

### *Āvarta* (Whirl)

With [slight] Udveṣṭita and Apaveṣṭita movements, the hands are in the Ḍola pose. The Cāṣagati Cārī is performed. That is Āvarta, and it is used in creeping with fear. 673-4

*Kuñcita* (Bent)

Where the right hand in the Akapadma pose is kept at the left side, palm facing upwards, and the left foot takes the Agratalasaṃcara pose, that is Kuñcita. It should be used to indicate the gods filled with great joy. 674-5

*Ḍolāpāda* (Swinging foot)

After the Ūrdhvajānu Cārī, the Ḍolāpādā Cārī is performed and the arms are kept in the Ḍola pose. Then it is called Ḍolāpāda by the great experts. 676

*Vivṛtta*

Bringing in the feet in the Ākṣiptā Cārī and bringing in the hands also, with the Vyāvṛtti and Parivṛtti movements, the waist is turned round (Bhramarī) and the Recaka gesture made with the hands. This is Vivṛtta. It is used in vigorous movement. 677-8

*Vinivṛtta*

With one foot in the Sūcī pose, a Svastika is made at the ankle of the other foot. With the Vyāvṛtta and Parivartita movements, the waist should be twisted around and back on one side. Then the Baddhā Cārī is performed and the Recita gesture made with the hands. This is Vinivṛtta. It is employed as in the previous case. 678-80

*Pārśvagrānta* (Extended to the side)

When the Pārśvagrāntā Cārī is performed and the hands follow the feet, then it is Pārśvagrānta [Karaṇa]; or the hands can be in keeping with the Abhinaya. It is to be used to indicate the movement of Bhīmasena, etc., which is mostly terrible. 680-1

*Niśumbhita*

Where one foot is in the Kuñcita pose near the heel of the other foot, the chest is raised high, and the middle finger of a Khaṭakāmukha hand makes a Tilaka mark on the forehead, that is Niśumbhita. Or, the hand can be as in the Vṛścika. This is used to indicate the great god [Śiva]. 682-3

*Vidyudbhrānta* (Lightning turn)

The foot is bent up backward and circles around on all sides near the head. This is called Vidyudbhrānta. Its application is said to be in the movements of the haughty. 684-5

*Atikrānta*

After performing the Atikrāntā Cārī, the foot is stretched out in front. The hands are used to fit the context. This is Atikrānta [Karaṇa]. 685-6

*Vikṣipta* (Thrown out)

After performing successively the Vidyudbhrāntā and Daṇḍapādā Cārī-s, if the hands, moving around

in the same direction by Udveṣṭita and Apaveṣṭita movements, are bent and thrown up backwards or sideways, then it is Vikṣipta. The movement of the haughty is to be indicated by it. 686-8

*Vivartita* (Twisted around)

Where, after throwing out one hand and one foot, the base of the spine is twisted around, and the other hand makes the Recita gesture, it is called Vivartita. 688-9

*Gajavikrīḍita* (Elephant's sport)

If, after performing the Ḍolāpādā Cārī, the [left] hand in the Karihasta pose keeps moving near the ear, then it is Gajavikrīḍita, whose name indicates what it is. 689-90

*Gaṇḍasūci* (Sūci at the cheek)

The foot is in the Sūci pose, the sides in the Nata pose, the [right] hand in the Khatakāmukha pose at the chest, and the left hand in the Alapallava pose touching the cheek. This is Gaṇḍasūci. Here some desire Sūcīpāda in the region [of the cheek]. Others want Sūcīmukha Nṛtta hand pose. Some others take it as Sūcīmukha Abhinaya hand pose; the decoration of the cheek is to be represented by the [Gaṇḍasūci] Karaṇa in that case. 690-2

*Garuḍapluta* (Garuḍa's leap)

Where the hands make the Latā and Recita gestures, the feet are in the pose of Vṛścika [Karaṇa]

and the chest is raised up, it is Garuḍapluta, true to its name [i.e., indicating the flight of the bird, Garuḍa].

693

*Talasam̐sphoṭita* (Clapping with the palms)

In performing the Daṇḍapādā or Atikrāntā Cārī, while the foot lifted up comes down quickly in front, the hands clap making a sound; then it is Talasam̐sphoṭita, which is what it signifies [clapping with the palms of the hand].

694-5

*Pārśvajānu* (Knee at the side)

If one foot is placed at the back [of the thigh] of the other foot which is in the Sama pose, one hand in the Muṣṭi pose being kept at the chest and the other in Ardhaçandra at the waist, then it should be known as Pārśvajānu. It is to be employed to indicate fighting and struggling.

695-6

*Gṛdhrāvalīnaka* (Kite-like)

One foot is stretched out backwards [with the other knee bent], and the hands make the Latā gesture touching the ground with the thumbs. That is Gṛdhrāvalīnaka, and it is used to indicate the fighting of great birds.

697

*Sūci* (Needle)

Throwing up one foot, bend it and bring it down without touching the ground. The hand on that side in the Khaṭakāmukha pose is kept at the chest and the other [hand] in the Alapadma pose in the region

of the head. The same is repeated on the other side. Then it is called Sūci by Śārṅgadeva. It is used to indicate wonder. 698-9

*Ardhasūci* (Half-needle)

Sūci, if done only with one hand and foot, is called Ardhasūci. 700

*Sūcīviddha* (Needle-pierced)

One hand in Pakṣavañcitaka or Ardhaçandra is placed on the hip. The other hand in Khaṭakāmukha is on the chest. One foot in Sūcī pose is kept at the heel of the other foot. Then it is Sūcīviddha, indicative of deliberation, etc. 700-1

*Hariṇapluta* (Deer-leap)

After performing the Hariṇaplutā Cārī, the two hands assume the Ḍola and Khaṭakāmukha poses. This is called Hariṇapluta (deer's leap), its use being indicated by the meaning of the term itself. 702

*Parivṛtta*

The two hands make the Ūrdhvamaṇḍalin gesture, one foot is in the Sūcī pose and with the Baddhā Cārī makes a Vivarta movement, and the loins are twisted around (Bhramarikā). That is the Karaṇa called Parivṛtta. 703

*Daṇḍapāda* (Rod-like leg)

First the Nūpurapādā Cārī is performed, then the Daṇḍapādā Cārī. The hand is quickly kept like a



rod. It is then called Daṇḍapāda. Scholars employ this to indicate moving about with pride. 704-5

*Mayūralalita* (Peacock's grace)

If the two hands make the Recita gesture, the feet in the Vṛścika position are bent, and the Bhramarī Cārī is performed, then it is Mayūralalita, true to its name [peacock's grace]. 705-6

*Preṅkholita* (Swinging)

After performing the Ḍolāpādā Cārī with one foot, jump up with the other foot and twist the loins around. Then it is Preṅkholita. 706-7

*Sannata*

After performing the Mṛgaplutā Cārī, the foot is crossed in front in Svastika and the hands assume the Ḍola pose. That is Sannata. It is employed to indicate running away from bad characters. 707-8

*Sarpita* (Sliding)

The foot in the Añcita pose moves away from the other foot, the head is bent, and the hand on that side makes the Recita gesture. Then the same is repeated on the other side. This is called Sarpita, and is employed to indicate the drawing near or going away of an intoxicated person. 708-9

*Karihasta* (Elephant's trunk)

If the left hand in the Khaṭakāmukha pose is placed at the chest, the other hand makes the

Udveṣṭita movement and takes the Tripatāka pose at the ear, and the foot on that side in the Añcita pose moves out, then it is called Karihasta by the learned. 710-1

### *Prasarpita* (Creeping)

One hand makes the Recita gesture. The foot on that side moves slowly away from the other foot, rubbing the ground, and the other hand makes the Latā gesture. Then it is Prasarpita, indicating the movement of celestial beings. 711-2

### *Apakrānta* (Retreating)

If the Baddhā and Apakrāntā Cārī-s are performed, the two hands moving in an appropriate manner, it is called Apakrānta [Karaṇa]. 713

### *Nitamba* (Hips)

The two hands in the Patāka pose with the fingers pointing downwards are brought to the region of the head [with the Vyāvartita movement]. Then with the Parivṛtta movement they are stretched out above the shoulders and made to face each other. Then turning down the fingers facing the body, they make the Nitamba gesture. This is Nitamba Karaṇa. 714-5

### *Skhalita* (Wavering)

When in the Ḍolāpādā Cārī the feet swing to and fro, the hands in Haṃsapakṣaka follow the

movements of the foot, and this is repeated on the other side, it is considered to be Skhalita. 716

*Siṃhavikrīḍita* (Lion's sport)

After performing the Alātā Cārī, the foot is placed quickly in front, and the hand seems to give a slap [with the palm]. Then the same is repeated on the other side. This is Siṃhavikrīḍita. It should be employed in terrible walking. So says [Śārṅgadeva], the expert in Karaṇa-s. 717-8

*Siṃhākarṣita* (Lion-pull)

One foot is in the Vṛścika pose and the hands are in the Padmakōśa or Ūrṇanābha pose. When the other foot takes the Vṛścika pose, the earlier hand pose is dropped and again taken in the same way. Then it is Siṃhākarṣita, used to indicate the lion. 718-9

*Avahitthaka* (Dissimulation)

After performing the Janitā Cārī, the hands in Arāla and Alapallava poses are placed on the forehead and the chest [respectively] with the fingers facing the body. Then they are brought to the sides by the Udveṣṭita and Vyāvṛtta movements respectively, and then to the chest by Apaveṣṭana and Parivṛtti movements respectively and kept facing each other. This is called Avahitthaka. It is employed to indicate the secret meanings of sentences. Others say that Avahitthaka Karaṇa is so called because it has Avahitthaka

hands and that it is suitable for indicating deliberation, weakness, etc. 720-3

### *Niveśa* (Settled)

When the hands in the Khaṭakāmukha pose are placed on the chest which is held high and the Maṇḍala posture is assumed, it is Niveśa. It is indicative of riding on an elephant. 724

### *Eḍakākriḍita* (Goat's sport)

Where [first] Eḍakākriḍitā Cārī is performed and the hands assume the Ḍola and Khaṭakāmukha poses and the body is bent and [then] turned, it is Eḍakākriḍita. It is desired in indicating the movement of low types of creatures. 725-6

### *Janita* (Begun)

Where after Janitā Cārī one hand in Muṣṭi is placed on the chest and the other is in Latā, it is Janita, used to indicate the beginning of an action.. 726-7

### *Upasṛta* (Approaching)

After the Ākṣiptā Cārī is performed to the left, the hand makes the Vyāvṛtta and Parivartita movements, is brought to the right side which is in the Nata position, and takes the Arāla pose. That is Upasṛta, indicative of approaching respectfully. 727-8.

### *Talasāṅghaṭṭita*

After performing the Ḍolāpādā Cārī, clap the hands kept in the Patāka pose and make the Recita

gesture [with the hands]; then assuming the Vaiṣṇava posture, the right hand is placed on the hip and the Recita gesture is made with the left hand. That is Talasaṅghaṭṭita, used in indicating sympathy. 729-30

### *Udvṛtta*

Where the hands and feet are stretched out and brought back [to the normal position], and the body performs the Udvṛttā Cārī, it is known as Udvṛtta by scholars. 731

### *Viṣṇukrānta* (Viṣṇu's stride)

One Kuñcita foot is advanced forward as if for rising up and the hands make the Recita gesture. That is Viṣṇukrānta, indicating Viṣṇu's movement. 732

### *Lolita* (Rolled)

One hand makes the Recita gesture and the other is in the Alapallava pose at the chest; the head rolls around (Lolita) and rests [while rolling] at the sides; the Vaiṣṇava posture is assumed. Then it is called Lolita by scholars. 733-4

### *Madaskhalita* (Intoxicated stumbling)

Where the feet move away in turn from the Svastika pose, the head makes the Parivāhita movement, and the hands are in the Ḍola pose, it is Madaskhalitaka. [Śārṅgadeva], the favourite of Śiva, says that it should be used to indicate medium intoxication. 734-5

*Sambhrānta* (Hurried)

Performing the Āviddhā Cārī, make Vyāvṛtta and Parivartana movements with the hand and keep it in the Alapadma pose behind the thigh. That is Sambhrānta. It is to be employed to indicate hurried movement. 736-7

*Viṣkambha* (Impediment)

The right hand in the Sūcīmukha Nṛtta pose approaches the left hand and strokes it; then it makes the up-and-down [Nikuṭṭita] movement along with the foot. The left hand is kept on the heart. This is repeated similarly on the other side. Then the right foot takes the Sūcī pose and the right hand the Alapadma pose, the left hand being as before. If this is done again and again it is called Viṣkambha. 737-9

*Udghaṭṭita* (Striking)

Where the foot makes the Udghaṭṭita movement, that side is Sannata, and the hands seem ready to beat time, it is Udghaṭṭita, if repeated on the other side. It indicates rejoicing. 740

*Śakaṭāśya*

The Śakaṭāśyā Cārī is performed; then one hand is stretched out along with the foot; the other hand in the Khaṭakāmukha pose is kept on the chest. Then it is called Śakaṭāśya. It indicates the playing of children in that way. 741-2

*Ūrūdvṛtta*

Along with the Ūrūdvṛttā Cārī, the hands make the Vyāvartana movement and in the Arāla and Khaṭakāmukha poses are placed on the back of the thighs. That is Ūrūdvṛtta. It is employed to indicate jealousy, making a request, and amorous anger. 742-3

*Vṛṣabhakriḍita* (Bull's play)

Performing the Alātā Cārī, the hands should make the Recita gesture, then with a Vyāvartana movement, they should be bent and in the Alapadma pose placed on the shoulders. This is declared by the wise as Vṛṣabhakriḍita. 744-5

*Nāgāpasarpita* (Serpent-creeping)

If the hands make the Recita gesture, the head assumes the Parivāhita pose, and the feet are moved away from Svastika, then it is Nāgāpasarpita. The wise explain its application in light intoxication. 745-6

*Gaṅgāvatarāṇa* (Gaṅgā's descent)

If the foot is lifted up and put down along with the raising and lowering of the hands in the Tripatāka pose, and the head also moves likewise, then it is Gaṅgāvatarāṇa, stated by Śārṅgadeva to indicate the descent of the Gaṅgā [on earth]. 747-8

In the Karaṇa-s, the left hand is normally kept on the chest and the right hand makes the movements suited to each Karaṇa. 748-9

## UTPLUTIKARAṆA-S

Now, following local practices (*deśī*), [Śārṅga-deva], dear to Śiva, explains the Utplutikaraṇa-s (Karaṇa-s with jumps) which are famous in various localities. 749-50

Añcita, Ekacaraṇāñcita, Bhairavāñcita, Daṇḍa-praṇāmāñcita, Kartaryañcita, Alaga, Kūrmālaga, Ūrdhvālaga, Antarālaga, Lohaḍī, Kartarīlohaḍī, Eka-pādalohaḍī, Darpasaraṇa, Jalaśayana, Nāgabandha, Kapālacūrṇana, Natapṛṣṭha, Matsyakaraṇa, Karasparśana, Eṇapluta, Tiryakkarāṇa, Tiryagañcita, Tiryaksvastika, Sūcyanta, Bāhyabhramarī, Antarbhramarī, Chatrabhramarī, Tiripabhramarī, Alagabhramarī, Cakrabhramarī, Añcitabhramarī, Śirobhramarī, Digbhramarī, Samapādāñcita, Bhrāntapādāñcita, and Skandhabhṛānta—these thirty-six Utplutikaraṇa-s are briefly pointed out by [Śārṅgadeva], the son of Soḍhala. 750-7

*Añcita*

Añcita is standing in the Sama position of the feet and jumping straight up. 757

*Ekapādāñcita*

Ekapādāñcita is the same done with one foot. 758

*Bhairavāñcita*

Jumping up with one foot kept at the back of the thigh is Bhairavāñcita. 758



*Daṇḍapraṇāmāñcita*

Where, after jumping as in Añcita, one falls on the ground [straight] like a rod, that is called Daṇḍapraṇāmāñcita by experts on dancing. 759

*Kartaryañcita*

Añcita with the feet crossed in Svastika is called Kartaryañcita. 760

*Alaga*

Jumping up with face downwards, falling in front and taking the Kukkuṭāsana (cock-pose) is called Alaga by the learned Śārṅgadeva. 760-1

*Kūrmālaga*

If in Alaga there is Kūrmāsana (tortoise-pose), then it is Kūrmālaga. 761

*Ūrdhvālaga*

If, after falling, [the dancer] stands up with feet in the Sama pose, it is Ūrdhvālaga. 762

*Antarālaga*

After doing Alaga and falling [on the ground], standing with the chest facing up and the head touching the hips at the back is Antarālaga. 762-3

*Lohaḍi*

Standing with the feet in the Sama position and twisting around the loins (Trika), if one jumps up and

falls obliquely, then it is called Lohaḍi or Luṭhita by scholars. 763-4

### *Kartarīlohaḍi*

The same done with the feet crossed in Svastika is considered to be Kartarīlohaḍi. 764

### *Ekapādalohaḍi*

If it is done with one foot, it is accepted to be Ekapādalohaḍi. 765

### *Darṣasaraṇa*

Standing in the Vaiṣṇava posture, if one falls on the ground sideways, then that Karaṇa is called Darṣasaraṇa by the master of Karaṇa-s, [Śārṅgadeva]. 765-6

### *Jalaśayana*

The same is called Jalaśayana, if [after falling] an attitude like that of [Viṣṇu] lying on water is taken. 766

### *Nāgabandha*

Nāgabandha is the same, if the posture assumed is Nāgabandha. 767

### *Kapālacūrṇana*

Standing with the feet in the Sama position, touching the ground with the head [by bending backwards], and returning to the normal position is described by scholars as Kapālacūrṇana. 767-8

*Nataprṣṭha*

After assuming the Kapālacūrṇana, if the chest is kept facing up<sup>1</sup> and the back bent, that is called Nataprṣṭha; others call it Vaṅkola. 768-9

*Matsyakaraṇa*

Jumping up and bending the waist, if one turns round to the left like a fish, then it is described as Matsyakaraṇa. 769-70

*Karasparśana*

If, after performing the Alaga movement and touching the ground with the hand, one moves round below, it is called Karasparśana. 770-1

*Eṇapluta*

After jumping up and taking the Sūcī pose with any one [foot] in the air, if one comes to the ground taking the Utkāṭa sitting pose kept [slightly] above [the ground], then it is Eṇapluta. 771-2

*Tiryakkarāṇa*

If, after jumping up obliquely with one foot, one comes to the ground and stands on the other foot, it is called Tiryakkarāṇa. 772-3

*Tiryagañcita*

If the oblique jumping is after standing with the feet in the Sama position, it is called Tiryagañcita. 773

<sup>1</sup> The reading should be *vakṣaṣṭhalaṃ tataḥ*.

*Tiryaksvastika*

If after crossing the feet in Svastika one jumps up obliquely, it is Tiryaksvastika. 774

*Sūcyanta-s*

If, at the end of the preceding Karana-s, the [Deśisthāna-s like] Samasūcī, etc., [cf. verses 1084-7] are taken, they are called Sūcyanta-s. 774-5

*Bāhyabhramarī*

If, standing on the right foot, one bends the left foot and revolves to the left, that is considered to be Bāhyabhramarī. 775-6

*Antarbhramarī*

The same, reversed, is Antarbhramarikā. 776

*Chatrabhramarī*

Where, after assuming a posture like that of Trivikrama [keeping one foot on the ground and raising the other], one turns round to the left, that is called Chatrabhramarī by the learned. 777

*Tiripabhramarī*

If after crossing the legs in Svastika one turns round obliquely, it is Tiripabhramarī. 778

*Alagabhramarī*

After assuming the Vaiṣṇava posture, if one stands on the left foot and rotates the body obliquely, then it is Alagabhramarī. 778-9

*Cakrabhramarī*

If in the middle of the Khaṇḍasūci Karaṇa, one spins like a wheel, it is Cakrabhramarī. 779

*Añcitabhramarī*

If after performing the Samapādā Cārī, the body is rotated obliquely, it is called Añcitabhramarī by [Śārṅgadeva], the favourite of Śaṅkara. 780

*Śirobhramarī*

If, standing on the head, the feet are held up and one turns round thrice, it is considered to be Śirobhramarī. 781

*Digbhramarī*

Turning round in the same manner as before but once each time, with [the help of] the hands come down to the ground successively in the four directions; then it is Digbhramarī. 782

*Samapādāñcita*

Performing the Añcita Karaṇa from the Sama position of the feet, come down on the ground on one shoulder and turn round horizontally waving the feet. Then it is called Samapādāñcita by the scholar [Śārṅgadeva], the expert in Karaṇa-s. 783-4

*Bhrāntapādāñcita*

Turning round the right foot, support the left shank by the back of the left toes and perform the

Añcita Karaṇa. Then falling down horizontally on the shoulders turn round waving the feet. This is called Bhrāntapādāñcita. 784-6

### *Skandhabhrānta*

After assuming the Utkāṣa sitting posture, perform the Añcita Karaṇa and stand supporting the ground with both shoulders [keeping the legs in the air]; then turn round as in the previous case [of Digbhamarī] and stop [successively] in the four directions [after each turn]. This is called Skandhabhrānta by scholars. 786-8

There are many other varieties of Karaṇa movements. They are not explained [here] by Śrī Śārṅga-deva for fear of making the text voluminous. 788-9

## AṄGAHĀRA-S

I shall explain the names as well as the definitions of the Aṅgahāra-s to be used in the Pūrvaraṅga [preliminary part of a dramatic performance] whose results are [partly] seen and [partly] unseen. 789-90

The graceful movement of the limbs to the proper places, composed of groups of Mātrkā-s (combinations of two Karaṇa-s), is called Aṅgahāra [i.e., the *hāra* or movement of *Aṅga*-s]. Or it is explained that this [particular] movement pertains to Hara, [Lord Śiva], and is demonstrated with the limbs. 790-1

Two Karaṇa-s make a Mātrkā; three Karaṇa-s, a Kalāpa; four, a Khaṇḍaka; and five a Saṅghāta. Thus others have explained the different terms on the

basis of the number [of Karaṇa-s in a combination]. The sage [Bharata] himself considered in these only the question of fewer or more Karaṇa-s; this is indicated by the term 'or', in 'By two, three or four' ['*dvābhyām tribhiḥ caturbhir vā*, in *Nāṭyaśāstra* IV. 31]. 792-4

Sthirahasta, Paryasta, Sūcividdha, Aparājita, Vaiśākharecita, Pārśvasvastika, Bhramara, Ākṣiptaka, Paricchinna, Madavilasita, Āliḍha, Ācchurita, Pārśvaccheda, Apasarpita, Mattākriḍa, and Vidyudbhrānta—these sixteen are explained as Āṅgahāra-s with an even number of [time] units, acceptable to the sage [Bharata]. 794-7

Viṣkambhāpasṛta, Mattaskhalita, Gatimaṇḍala, Apaviddha, Viṣkambha, Udghaṭṭita, Ākṣiptarecita, Recita, Ardhanikuṭṭa, Vṛścikāpasṛta, Alātaka, Parāvṛtta, Parivṛttarecita, Udvṛttaka, Sambhrānta, and Svastikarecita—these are the sixteen [Āṅgahāra-s] with an odd number of [time] units. Together they are thirty-two. Owing to the infinite number of combinations of Karaṇa-s, they [Āṅgahāra-s] are infinite in number; still these thirty-two are given on the basis of their importance. 797-801

Each one of the Karaṇa-s should be done in one long Kalā [time unit] in the case of all the Āṅgahāra-s. So says [Śārṅgadeva], the expert on Karaṇa-s. 801-2

### *Sthirahasta*

Making the Līna, Samanakha, and Vyamsita Karaṇa-s, separate the hands, give up the Āliḍha posture and take up the Pratyāliḍha posture

Then perform successively the Nikuṭṭaka, Ūrūdvṛtta, Svastika, Ākṣiptaka, Nitamba, Karihasta, and Kaṭicchinna Karaṇa-s. Sthirahasta is made up of these ten Karaṇa-s, according to [Śārṅgadeva], the devotee of Śiva. Some experts on dramaturgy say that in all Aṅgahāra-s the portion from the beginning up to Pratyālīḍha is to be used. 802-5

*Parvastaka*

Talapuṣpapaṭa, Apavidḍha, and Vartita, and then Nikuṭṭaka, Ūrūdvṛtta, Ākṣipta, Uromaṇḍala, Nitamba, Karihasta, and Kaṭicchinna successively—by these ten Karaṇa-s, Parvastaka is explained by scholars. 806-7

*Sūcividdha*

Ardhasūci, Vikṣipta, Āvarta, Nikuṭṭaka, Ūrūdvṛtta, Ākṣipta, Uromaṇḍala, Karihasta, and Kaṭicchinna—by these nine Karaṇa-s [successively], the Aṅgahāra named Sūcividdha is explained by Bharata and others. 808-9

*Aparājita*

Daṇḍapāda, Vyamsita, Prasarpita, Nikuṭṭaka, Ardhanikuṭṭaka, Ākṣipta, Uromaṇḍala, Karihasta, and Kaṭicchinna—the definition of Aparājita is given by the doubtless [Śārṅgadeva] as consisting of these nine Karaṇa-s [successively]. 810-1

*Vaiśākharecita*

Vaiśākharecita [Karaṇa] done on both sides, then Nūpura, Bhujāṅgatrāsita, Unmatta, Maṇḍalasvastika,



Nikuṭṭaka, Ūrūdvṛtta, Ākṣipta, Uromaṇḍala, Karihasta, and Kaṭicchinna—these eleven Karaṇa-s, in the respective order, constitute the Aṅgahāra named Vaiśākharecita. 812-4

### *Pārśvasvastika*

Diksvastika, then Ardhanikuṭṭaka done on one side, then again Diksvastika, then Ardhanikuṭṭaka done on the other side, Apaviddha, Ūrūdvṛtta, Ākṣipta, Nitamba, Karihasta, and Kaṭicchinna—by these eight Karaṇa-s is Pārśvasvastika constituted, or by ten Karaṇa-s because of the repetition of the first two. 814-6

### *Bhramara*

Nūpura, Ākṣipta, Chinna, Sūci, Nitamba, Karihasta, Uromaṇḍala, and Kaṭicchinna—by these eight Karaṇa-s, Bhramara is explained. 817-8

### *Ākṣiptaka*

Nūpura, Vikṣipta, Alāta, Ākṣipta, Uromaṇḍala, Nitamba, Karihasta, and Kaṭicchinna—by these eight Karaṇa-s is Ākṣiptaka made. Some [experts] say that Vikṣipta, Alāta, and Ākṣipta are done twice. 818-20

### *Paricchinna*

Samanakha, Chinna, and Sambhrānta, then Bhramara to the left, Ardhasūci on the left side, Atikrānta, Bhujaṅgaatrāsita, Karihasta, and Kaṭicchinna—by these nine Karaṇa-s Paricchinna is done. 820-2

*Madavilasita*

Madaskhalita, Mattalli, and Talasaṃsphoṭita are done many times in a variety of ways; then Nikuṭṭaka, Ūrūdvṛtta, Karihasta, and Kaṭicchinna—these are the seven [Karaṇa-s] given for Madavilasita. By repeating the [first] three Karaṇa-s thrice, the Karaṇa-s become thirteen. Some desire the first three Karaṇa-s repeated four, five, etc., times. 822-5

*Āliḍha*

Vyaṃsita, Nikuṭṭaka, Nūpura done with the left foot, Alātaka and Ākṣipta with the other [right] foot, then Uromaṇḍala, Karihasta, and Kaṭicchinna—by these eight Karaṇa-s done successively is the Aṅgahāra named Āliḍha acceptable to sage Bharata. 825-7

*Ācchuritaka*

Nūpura, Bhramara, Vyaṃsita, Alātaka, Nitamba, Sūci, Karihasta, and Kaṭicchinna—these eight Karaṇa-s are given for Ācchuritaka. 827-8

*Pārśvaccheda*

Vṛścikakuṭṭita, Ūrdhvajānu, Ākṣipta, Svastika, then after turning the loins around, Uromaṇḍala, Nitamba, Karihasta, and Kaṭicchinna—these eight Karaṇa-s [successively] are stated to be in Pārśvaccheda. 829-30

*Apasarpita*

[First] Apakrānta, then solely the hand-movements of Vyaṃsita, and then Karihasta, Ardhasūci, Vikṣipta,

Kaṭicchinna, Ūrūdvr̥tta, Ākṣipta, Karihasta, and Kaṭicchinna—these seven and a half Karaṇa-s, or nine and a half including the repetition of Kaṭicchinna and Karihasta, are given in Apasarpita. 831-3

### *Mattākrīḍa*

After doing Bhramara, Nūpura, and Bhujaṅga-trāsita on the right side only, Vaiśākharecita, Ākṣipta, Chinna, Bhramara, Vyamsita, Uromaṇḍala, Nitamba, Karihasta, and Kaṭicchinna—by these twelve Karaṇa-s successively, or eleven, counting the repetition of Bhramara as a unit, is the Aṅgahāra named Mattākrīḍa constituted, according to [Śārṅgadeva], devotee of Śiva. 833-6

### *Vidyubhrānta*

Ardhasūci on the left side, and then Vidyubhrānta on the right, then again the two [Karaṇa-s] on the opposite sides, then Chinna and Atikrānta, then with the left side Latāvṛścika and Kaṭicchinna—thus six Karaṇa-s, or eight in number including the repetition of the two, are known in Vidyubhrānta [Aṅgahāra] by experts. 837-9

These are the sixteen Aṅgahāra-s with even units [of time].

### *Viṣkambhāpasṛta*

After doing the Nikuṭṭaka Karaṇa, perform successively Ardhanikuṭṭaka, Bhujaṅgatrāsita, Bhujaṅga-trastarecita, Ākṣipta, Uromaṇḍala, Latā hand gesture,

and Kaṭicchinna. These are the seven Karaṇa-s in Viśkambhāpasṛta. 839-41

### *Mattaskhalita*

Mattalli, Gaṇḍasūci, Līna, Apaviddha, then Tala-saṃsphoṭita to be done at the same speed [as Apaviddha], then Karihasta, and Kaṭicchinna—these seven Karaṇa-s successively are given for the Aṅghāra named Mattaskhalita. 841-3

### *Gatimaṇḍala*

Maṇḍalasvastika, Niveśa, Unmatta, Udghaṭṭita, Mattalli, Ākṣipta, Uromaṇḍala, and Kaṭicchinna are the eight Karaṇa-s in Gatimaṇḍala, as given by the doubtless [Śārṅgadeva]. 843-5

### *Apaviddha*

First Apaviddha, then Sūcividdha, then making the Udveṣṭita movement with the hands, turn round the loins with the Baddhā Cārī, afterwards assume the Karaṇa-s Ūrūdvṛtta, Uromaṇḍalaka, and Kaṭicchinna as the fifth. Then there is Apaviddha. 845-7

### *Viśkambha*

In Viśkambha there are the Karaṇa-s Nikuṭṭaka, Nikuñcita, Añcita, Ūrūdvṛtta, then Ardhanikuṭṭa, then Bhujāṅgatrāsita, then Bhramara with the Udveṣṭana movement of the hands, then Karihasta and Kaṭicchinna as the ninth. 847-9

*Udghaṭṭita*

In Udghaṭṭita there is Nikuṭṭa, Uromaṇḍalaka, then Nitamba, Karihasta, and fifthly Kaṭicchinna.

849-50

*Ākṣiptarecita*

Svastikarecita, Prṣṭhasvastika, Diksvastika, Kaṭi-sama, Ghūrṇita, Bhramara, Vṛścikarecita, Pārśvani-kuṭṭaka, Uromaṇḍala, Sannata, Siṃhākarṣitaka, Nāgā-pasarpita, then Vakṣaḥsvastika according to some scholars, Daṇḍapakṣa, Lalāṭatilaka, Latāvṛścika, Niśum-bhita, Vidyudbhrānta, Gajavikriḍita, Nitamba, Viṣṇu-krānta, Ūrūdvr̥tta, Ākṣipta, Uromaṇḍala, Nitamba, Karihasta, and optionally Kaṭicchinna—these twenty-five Karana-s are required for Ākṣiptarecita according to the ancients. Because Nitamba and Uromaṇḍala are repeated, they become twenty-seven [in number]. According to the view of those who do not accept Vakṣaḥsvastika and Kaṭicchinna in this [Aṅgahāra] there are only twenty-five [Karaṇa-s], in spite of the repetition.

850-8

*Recita*

Svastikarecita, Ardharecita, Vakṣaḥsvastika, Un-matta, Ākṣiptarecita, Ardhamattalli, Recakanikuṭṭaka, Bhujaṅgatrastarecita, Nūpura, Vaiśākharecita, Bhu-jaṅgāñcita, Daṇḍarecita, Cakramaṇḍala, Vṛścikarecita, Vivṛtta, Vinivṛtta, Vivartita, Garuḍapluta, Lalita, Mayūralalita, Sarpita, Skhalita, Prasarpita, Tala-saṅghaṭṭita, Vṛṣabhakriḍita, Lolita—performing these twenty-six Karaṇa-s by arranging them in four parts in

unequal numbers in the four directions, do the Uromaṇḍala and Kaṭicchinna [Karaṇa-s] at the end. This is Recita. 858-65

*Ardhanikuṭṭaka*

Nūpura, Vivṛta, Nikuṭṭa, Ardhanikuṭṭa, Ardha-recita, Recakanikuṭṭaka, Lalita, Vaiśākharecita, Catura, Daṇḍarecita, Vṛścikakuṭṭita, Pārśvanikuṭṭaka, Sambhṛānta, Udghaṭṭita, Uromaṇḍala, Karihasta, and Kaṭicchinna—these seventeen Karaṇa-s [successively] make Ardhanikuṭṭaka. 865-8

*Vṛścikāpasṛta*

First Latāvṛścika, then Nikuñcita, Mattalli, Nitamba, Karihasta, and Kaṭicchinna as the sixth—these are given by scholars for [the Aṅghāra] Vṛścikāpasṛta. Here in the place of Nitamba some give Bhramara. 866-70

*Alātaka*

Svastika, twice Vyamsita, Alāta, Ūrdhvajānu, Nikuñcita, Ardhasūci, Vikṣipta, Udvrta, Ākṣipta, Karihasta, and Kaṭicchinna—these eleven Karaṇa-s are in Alātaka. One more, if Vyamsita is counted twice. 871-2

*Parāvṛtta*

Do the Janita [Karaṇa] on the right side, then Śakaṭāśya and Alātaka, Bhramara to the left, then Karihasta with the Nikuṭṭita movement of the hands, and then Kaṭicchinna. These six Karaṇa-s in sequence

are given by [Sārṅgadeva], the son of Soḍhala, for Parāvṛtta. Nikuṭṭaka [Nikuṭṭita] is explained by experts as downward and upward movement of a limb. 873-5

### *Parivṛttarecita*

After doing the Nitamba Karaṇa, do Svastika-recita, Vikṣiptākṣiptaka, Latāvṛścika, Unmatta, Karihasta, Bhujaṅgatrāsita, Ākṣipta, and Nitamba. These nine Karaṇa-s up to Nitamba should be performed [all round] along with Bhramarikā movements. Doing this [also] on another side, and after turning round to the other two sides, do Karihasta and Kaṭicchinna standing at the first place—that is called Parivṛttarecita by the teachers. The procedure of performing [the Karaṇa-s] all around, omitting the last two Karaṇa-s has been prescribed for all the Aṅgahāra-s by the scholar Śārṅgadeva, who knows the views of Bhaṭṭa[nāyaka], Abhinavagupta and others. 875-80

### *Udvṛttaka*

After Nūpura Karaṇa, do Bhujaṅgāñcita, Gṛdhrā-valīnaka, then Vikṣipta twice, one on each side, then Sūci in between [two] Udvṛtta-s, then Nitamba, Latāvṛścika, and Kaṭicchinna. By these nine Karaṇa-s, Udvṛttaka is constituted. Including the repetition of Vikṣipta and Udvṛtta, the number will be two more.<sup>1</sup> 881-3

<sup>1</sup> The last line should read *vikṣiptodvṛttābhyaṃ*.

*Sambhrānta*

Vikṣipta, Añcita, Gaṇḍasūci, Gaṅgāvatarāṇa, Ardhasūci, Daṇḍapāda, Catura made to the left side, then Bhramara, Nūpura, Ākṣipta, Ardhasvastika, Nitamba, Karihasta, Uromaṇḍala, and Kaṭicchinna—by these fifteen Karaṇa-s successively, the experts explain Sambhrānta. 883-6

*Svastikarecita*

After Vaiśākharecita and Vṛścika, repeat the two again, and then do successively Nikuṭṭaka along with the Latā hand pose, and Kaṭicchinna as the fourth; then it is known as Svastikarecita. Because of the repetition of the first two, there are two more [i.e., six in all]. 886-8

These are the sixteen Aṅgahāra-s with even units [of time].

The Aṅgahāra-s are to be employed by intelligent people, who desire great felicity, in the Utthāpana and other parts of the preliminaries [of a play], in Pāṇika songs such as Vardhamāna and Āsārīta, along with musical instruments like Mṛdaṅga, Gomukha, Bhambhā, Bherī, Paṭaha, Ḍiṇḍima, Paṇava, and Dardura which follow the time (*tāla*) and the tempo (*laya*). 888-90

Thus the use of Karaṇa-s in Aṅgahāra-s is explained. It is said that there is great merit even in the separate employment of Karaṇa-s. 891



## RECAKA-S

Now we explain the four Recaka-s described by Bharata; they relate to the feet, hands, waist, and neck. 892

The continual movement [of the foot] in between the heel and the tip of the toe and then outwards, involving bending and stretching, is the Recaka of the foot. 893

A quick circular movement of the hands in the Hamsapakṣa pose, [inwards and outwards], alternately is the Recaka of the hands [i.e., while one moves out, the other moves in]. 894

Turning round the waist in all directions along with the vertical rotation of the toe slightly spread out, is the Recaka of the waist. 895

Shaking and moving the neck around is said to be the Recaka of the neck. 896

These [Recāka-s] produce separately the same result as a part of the Aṅgahāra-s.<sup>1</sup> 896

## CĀRĪ-S

The Cārī is constituted of various [beautiful] movements of the feet, shanks, thighs, and hips performed simultaneously. The term is derived from the verbal root *car* (to move), by the addition of the suffix *i* ( )

<sup>1</sup> The necessary Recaka-s are added to the Aṅgahāra-s to make the total time-unit, even or odd, as required. See Kallinātha on v. 797.

in the instrumental sense, and the feminine suffix [ṇi]i[ṣ] at the end. 897

Like the hand poses in Abhinaya, in the Gaits (Gati-s), the Cārī suitable for effecting the particular foot positions desired [for the gait] must be performed and the further [Cārī] must be in keeping with the first. 898

Owing to this interdependence, the Cārī itself is called Vyāyāma. Its varieties are: Cārī, Karaṇa, Khaṇḍa, and Maṇḍala. 899

Of these the Cārī which can be effected by [any] one foot is called Cārī. That which requires both feet is called Karaṇa. This Karaṇa is different from the Nṛttakaraṇa. 900

Three Karaṇa-s make a Khaṇḍa and three or four Khaṇḍa-s make a Maṇḍala, depending on whether the Tryasra [Cācatpuṭa] or Caturaśra [Caccatpuṭa] Tāla is adopted.<sup>1</sup> 901

This [the Cārī requiring one foot] is of two kinds: the earthly (Bhaumī) and the aerial (Ākāśikī). Of these, the earthly Cārī-s are sixteen: Samapādā, Sthitāvartā, Śakaṭāsyā, Vicyavā, Adhyardhikā, Cāṣa-gati, Eḍakākriḍitā, Samotsaritamattallī, Mattallī, Ut-spanditā, Aḍḍitā, Spanditā, Avaspanditā, Baddhā, Janitā, and Ūrūdvr̥ttā. 902-4

Now we shall name the aerial Cārī-s: Atikrāntā, Apakrāntā, Pārśvakrāntā, Mṛgaplutā, Ūrdhvajānu, Alātā, Sūcī, Nūpurapādikā, Ḍolāpādā, Daṇḍapādā,

<sup>1</sup> See Tālādhyāya, vol. III of the text.

Vidyubdhrāntā, Bhramarī, Bhujaṅgastrāsītā, Ākṣiptā, Āviddhā, and Udvṛttā. These together form thirty-two Cārī-s accepted by Bharata. 905-7

There are other Cārī-s well known in various parts of the country. Now we shall speak about them: Rathacakrā, Parāvṛttatalā, Nūpuraviddhakā, Tiryaṅmukhā, Marālā, Karihastā, Kulirikā, Viśiṣṭā, Kātarā, Pārṣṇirecitā, Ūrutāḍitā, Ūruveṇī, Talodvṛttā, Hariṇatrāsikā, Ardhamanḍalikā, Tiryakkuñcitā, Madālasā, Saṃcāritā, Utkuñcitā, Stambhakriḍanikā, Laṅghita-jaṅghā, Sphuritā, Avakuñcitā, Saṅghaṭṭitā, Khuttā, Svastikā, Taladarśinī, Purāṭī, Ardhapurāṭī, Sarikā, Sphurikā, Nikuṭṭikā, Latākṣepā, Aḍḍaskhalitikā, and Samaskhalitikā—these thirty-five are given as the earthly Cārī-s [of the Deśī type]. 908-13

Vidyubdhrāntā, Puraḥkṣepā, Vikṣepā, Hariṇaplutā, Apakṣepā, Ḍamarī, Daṇḍapādā, Aṅghritāḍitā, Jaṅghālaṅghanikā, Alātā, Jaṅghāvartā, Veṣṭana, Udveṣṭana, Utkṣepa, Prṣṭhotkṣepa, Sūcikā, Viddhā, Prāvṛta, Ullola—these nineteen are the aerial Cārī-s [of the Deśī type]. Together they are stated to be fifty-four. The Cārī-s of Mārga (classical) and Deśī type are together taken to be eighty-six. 913-6

Now we shall give the definitions of these Cārī-s in order: 917

### 1. EARTHLY CĀRĪ-S

#### *Samapādā*

When one stands with the two feet close together, the nails [of the toes] on a level, and in the Samapādā

posture, it is called Samapādā [Cārī]. It is considered to be a Cārī because it can be useful [as the starting point, etc.] of movements. But it is [counted] among the Sthāna-s also. 917-8

### *Sthitāvartā*

One foot in Agratalasaṃcara moves across to the [external] side of the other foot to form a Svastika with the knee turned inwards and similarly [i.e., Agratalasaṃcara] the other foot is separated [after making a Svastika] and brought to its own side. This is then called Sthitāvartā. 919-20

### *Śakaṭāśyā*

Where the upper part of the body is held with effort,<sup>1</sup> one foot in Agratalasaṃcara is stretched forward, and the chest is kept in Udvāhita, it is called Śakaṭāśyā. *Āśya* means 'to be thrown'. It is by using this Cārī that a cart (*śakaṭa*) is to be thrown forward. [Hence the term Śakaṭāśyā for this Cārī]. 920-1

### *Vicyavā*

If from the Samapāda position the feet are lifted up and the foreparts are brought down [Nikuṭṭana] on the ground, it is called Vicyavā. 922

### *Adhyardhikā*

The left foot is placed near the heel of the right foot; the right foot is drawn away to its own side where

<sup>1</sup> The text should read *yatnāt dhṛtvā*.

it is placed crosswise at a distance of a span (Tāla) and a half; then in the same way the right foot is placed at the heel of the left foot and [after moving away] placed obliquely. This is called Adhyardhikā. 923-4

### *Cāṣagati*

The right foot is put forward by a span, then drawn back by two spans, then simultaneously with jumping movements both the feet approach each other a little and separate, [or] separate and approach each other. This is accepted to be Cāṣagati, and is used in frightened movements, etc. 925-6

### *Eḍakākṛīḍitā*

When after a slight jump the two feet in Agratalaṣaṃcara come down one after the other, it is considered to be Eḍakākṛīḍitā. 927

### *Samotsaritamattallī*

One foot in Agratalaṣaṃcara is kept behind the other foot making a Svastika at the shank. Then the other foot is made Agratalaṣaṃcara and the feet make circular movements moving away and coming together. This is Samotsaritamattallī, and is used to indicate moderate intoxication. 928-9

### *Mattallī*

The feet are kept with the entire sole touching the ground, crossed in Svastika at the shanks, and slightly oblique. Then with a circular movement

they either come together or move away from each other. This is called Mattallī, and is used in slight intoxication. 930-1

### *Utspanditā*

Where the foot moves slowly to and fro in the manner of the Recaka, [touching the ground] with the little toe and the big toe alternately, that Cārī is called Utspanditā by the wise. The term *spanda* is used for falling down owing to carelessness. Some say that here the Nṛtta hand named Recita [is to be used]. 931-3

### *Additā*

One foot in Agratalasaṁcara is alternately rubbed against the forepart and the back of the other foot kept in the 'Sama position. This is known as Additā. 934

### *Spanditā*

Where the thigh is motionless (I. paṇṇa), the left foot is in the Sama position, and the right foot is stretched out crosswise to a distance of five spans, that is accepted to be Spanditā. 935

### *Avaspanditā*

The same movement with the other foot is accepted to be Avaspanditā. 936

### *Baddhā*

The two thighs make the Valana movement and the shanks are crossed in Svastika. Or, releasing

the Svastika, make circular movements with the tips of the feet and bring each foot to its side. This is accepted to be Baddhā. 936-7

### *Janitā*

That is called Janitā Cārī where one foot is in Agratalasaṃcara, one hand is kept at the chest in the Muṣṭi pose, and the other [hand] moves in a beautiful way. [Here] the movement of the foot [in Agratalasaṃcara] is important; the other [movement of the hand] is only secondary. 938-9

### *Ūrūdvṛttā*

The heel of one foot in Agratalasaṃcara is placed facing the back of the other foot, or the reverse is done. One of the shanks, with the knee bent and turned inwards, faces the other shank. Then it is called Ūrūdvṛttā Cārī. It is employed to indicate shyness, jealousy, etc. 939-41

These are well known as being used in wrestling in the Aṅgahāra-s [i.e., in Nṛtta] and in Nāṭya, and are described in the *Nāṭya-sāstra* as being based on the eternal Veda-s. 941-2

## 2. AERIAL CĀRĪ-S

### *Atikrāntā*

A Kuñcita foot is raised to the region of the ankle of the other foot and put forward to some extent; then it is raised naturally as in the world and made to

fall on the ground at a distance of four spans. This is called Atikrāntā Cārī by the doubtless [Śārṅgadeva].

942-4

### *Apakrāntā*

After performing the Baddhā Cārī, throw up the Kuñcita foot and bring it down at the side. Then it is called Apakrāntā Cārī.

944-5

### *Pārśvakrāntā*

Raise up one Kuñcita foot on its own side; then bring it down on the ground by its heel [Udghaṭṭita]. Then it is called Pārśvakrāntā. This is well known to people as Pārśvadaṇḍapādā. Others say that in this [Cārī], the foot must be raised near the other thigh and then brought down on the ground with the Udghaṭṭita movement.

945-7

### *Mṛgaplutā*

Throw up one Kuñcita foot, jump up and bring it [the foot] down on the ground. Bring down at the back the shank of the other foot kept in Añcita. Then it is to be known as Mṛgaplutā. It is to be done by the Vidūṣaka.

948-9

### *Ūrdhvajānu*

Throw up one foot in Kuñcita and make its knee level with the breast; keep the other foot steady and motionless. This is Ūrdhvajānu.

949-50

### *Alātā*

One foot is stretched backwards with its sole facing the other thigh and then its heel is brought



down to the ground on its own side. This is then called Alātā. 950-1

### *Sūci*

Throw up one Kuñcita foot, stretch its shank [bringing it] up to the knee or up to the thigh, and with its forepart bent let the foot fall on the ground [on its forepart]. This is called Sūci. 951-2

### *Nūpurapādikā*

Bring backwards one Añcita foot and touch the hips with its heel; then raising the shank let it fall on the ground on its forepart. This is called Nūpurapādikā Cārī. 953-4

### *Ḍolāpādā*

Raising one Kuñcita foot and swinging it from side to side, place it by its heel on its own side. This is called Ḍolāpādā. 954-5

### *Daṇḍapādā*

One foot as in Nūpura[pādā Cārī] is placed at the heel of the other and then stretched forward quickly with the tip of the knee facing the region of the body. This is called Daṇḍapādā Cārī. 955-6

### *Vidyubhrāntā*

One foot touches the head which is turned back, is turned round in all directions, and stretched. This is Vidyubhrāntā. 957

*Bhramarī*

The foot is in Atikrāntā Cārī, the thigh which is oblique is twisted around, and the whole body moves round through the turning of the sole of the other foot. This is called Bhramarī Cārī by Śārṅga-deva. 958-9

*Bhujāṅgatrāsītā*

Raise one Kuñcita foot near the root of the other thigh and make the heel face the hips. [Then] the knee moves to its own side, the sole of the foot facing upwards due to the turning of the waist and the knee. This is Bhujāṅgatrāsītā, indicative of the fear of snakes. 959-61

*Ākṣiptā*

Throw up one Kuñcita foot to the height of three spans and bring it to the other side and then, crossing the shank [with the other shank] in Svastika, let it fall on the ground on its heel. This is known as Ākṣiptā Cārī. 961-2

*Āviddhā*

From a Svastika made without the shanks touching each other, one foot in the Kuñcita position is stretched obliquely, brought to its own side, and made to fall on its heel in the region of the other heel. This is Āviddhā. 963-4

*Udvṛttā*

One foot is in the Āviddhā Cārī. Its heel is kept in the region of the other thigh. Then jumping up and turning round, the foot is made to fall on the ground. Then similarly the other foot is raised [and made to perform all the movements]. This is called Udvṛttā. 964-5

The Cārī-s can be performed [only] by delicate movements of the limbs. They are to be employed by the learned in fighting and wrestling, in Nṛtta, in Nāṭya, and in Gati (gait). 966

The hand or the foot [movement], whichever is important in the context, should be employed first; and then only the other. When both are equal [in importance, they may be used] simultaneously. 967

In accordance with the foot, the hand [must move]; and according to the hand, the hips [must move]. The major and minor limbs (Aṅga-s and Upāṅga-s) are declared by the learned to follow the foot [movements]. 968

When the Cārī-s are predominant, the other limbs are to be employed thus. When the hand [movements] are important, the other limbs follow the hand. 969

Just as in the Cārī the foot moves again and again and [then] comes to rest on the ground, so also [in the case of hand movements], the hand makes various movements and rests on the waist. 970

In Nāṭya the hand must rest on the waist in the Ardhaçandra poṣe; in Nṛtta the hand [at the waist] must be either Pakṣavañcitaka or Pakṣapṛadyotaka. 971

3. EARTHLY DEŚI CĀRI-S

*Rathacakrā*

If the two feet are kept on the ground in the Caturaśra posture [Deśi Sthānaka] and then slipped forward or backward, it is called Rathacakrā. 972

*Parāvṛttatalā*

The sole of the foot faces up at the back and is stretched outwards. This is called Parāvṛttatalā by Śārngadeva. 973

*Nūpuraviddhā*

Standing with the feet crossed in Svastika, make Recita movements of the feet with the heels and with the foreparts [of the feet]. This is called Nūpuraviddhā. 974

*Tīryaṇmukhā*

Standing in the Vardhamāna posture, if the feet slide quickly to the right and the left it is Tīryaṇmukhā. 975

*Marālā*

The feet are kept in the Nandyāvarta posture and after making Recita movements with the heel and foreparts, they are stretched forward. This is called Marālā. 976

*Karihastā*

Standing in the Saṃphata posture, the feet rub the ground with their sides. This is known as Karihastā Cāri 977

*Kulīrikā*

Oblique movement with the feet kept in the Nandyāvarta posture, is Kulīrikā. 978

*Viśliṣṭā*

If the feet in Pārṣṇividdha Sthāna are separated and made to approach each other or move away from each other, that is called Viśliṣṭā by the learned. 978-9

*Kātarā*

Moving backwards with the feet kept in Nandyāvarta Sthāna is Kātarā. 979

*Pārṣṇirecitā*

Standing in the Pārṣṇipārśva Sthāna, if the heel makes the Recita movement, then the Cārī is called Pārṣṇirecitā by the learned. 980

*Ūrutāḍitā*

Standing in the Ekapāda Sthāna, if the foot on the ground strikes the thigh, then it is called Ūrutāḍitā Cārī. 981

*Ūruveṇī*

Where the thighs are crossed in Svastika and the feet rub the ground with their sides, that is called Ūruveṇī by the wise. 982

*Talodvṛttā*

Where the foreparts of the feet move forward quickly with the back of the toes [touching the ground], that is accepted by good people as Talodvṛttā Cārī. 983

*Hariṇatrāsikā*

Having the Kuñcita feet crossed in Svastika with the foreparts of the soles bent, one should jump and come down. That is called Hariṇatrāsikā. 984

*Ardhamaṇḍalikā*

Where the two feet move outwards rubbing the ground and return [with a circular movement to the original position] slowly one after the other, that is called Ardhamaṇḍalikā by the learned. 985

*Tiryakkuñcitā*

Where the foot kept obliquely is bent and thrown out repeatedly, it is called Tiryakkuñcitā Cārī by the master of Karaṇa-s [Śārṅgadeva]. 986

*Madālasā*

Where the two feet are placed here and there unsteadily as if by an intoxicated person, that is called Madālasā Cārī by the learned. 987

*Samcāritā*

One bent foot is thrown up again and again and brought [down] to touch the other foot and

the other foot is moved away obliquely. Then it is Saṁcāritā. 988

### *Utkuñcitā*

Raise the two Kuñcita feet and place them forward one by one. This is called Utkuñcitā Cārī by [Śārṅgadeva], the son of Soḍhala. 989

### *Stambhakrīḍanikā*

One foot is moved obliquely and the other foot made to touch it on the side by its sole again and again. This is Stambhakrīḍanikā. 990

### *Laṅghitajaṅghikā*

From the Khaṇḍasūci Sthāna one foot is dragged and pulled up quickly by the other foot. This is called Laṅghitajaṅghikā. 991

### *Sphuritā*

Sphuritā is quickly sliding with the sides of the feet touching the ground. 992

### *Avakuñcitā*

Regular backward movement with the two feet bent is Avakuñcitā. 992

### *Sanghaṭṭitā*

Standing in the Viṣamasūci Sthāna, jump up and come down stamping the ground with the feet. This is called Sanghaṭṭitā. 993

*Khuttā*

Striking the ground with the tip of the foot is called Khuttā. 994

*Svastikā*

The foot that assumes the Svastika form constitutes Svastikā. 994

*Taladarśinī*

Where, standing in Saṃhata Sthāna, the feet move separately and obliquely touching the ground with the external sides, that is called Taladarśinī. 995

*Purāṭikā*

Mutual up-and-down Nikuṭṭana movement of the feet with the sole raised is Purāṭikā. 996

*Ardhapurāṭikā*

The Nikuṭṭana movement on one Udvṛtta foot by the other which is Udvṛtta and Nikuṭṭa [?] is Ardhapurāṭikā. 996-7

*Sarikā*

Where one foot glides forward, it is accepted to be Sarikā. 997

*Sphurikā*

Gliding forward with the two feet kept in the Sama posture is Sphurikā. 998



*Nikuṭṭikā*

Standing on the bent tip of the foot is Nikuṭṭikā. 998

*Latākṣepā*

Where, after placing the foot backwards and then stretching it forward, the Nikuṭṭana movement is made on the ground, it is called Latākṣepā. 999

*Aḍḍaskhalitikā*

The stumbling of the feet obliquely is Aḍḍaskhalitikā. 1000

*Samaskhalitikā*

If the feet make a stumbling movement forwards and backwards obliquely and simultaneously, it is called [Sama]skhalitikā Cārī. 1000-1

## 4. AERIAL DEŚI CĀRĪ-S

*Vidyudbhrāntā*

Throwing up the foot in front and moving it around above the forehead quickly, place it on the ground. This is known as Vidyudbhrāntā. 1001-2

*Puraḥkṣepā*

Throwing up the Kuñcita foot and stretching it forward quickly, place it on the ground. This is Puraḥkṣepā. 1002-3

*Vikṣepā*

The foot is stretched forward in the air and bent repeatedly. This is called Vikṣepā Cārī by Śārṅgadeva. 1003-4

*Harīṇaplutā*

Jumping up with the foot bent and letting it fall repeatedly constitutes Harīṇaplutā. 1004

*Apakṣepā*

Where one foot touches with its external side the back of the other thigh and moves near the hips, that is called Apakṣepā. 1005

*Ḍamarī*

Ḍamarī is the circular movement of the bent foot to the left and the right. 1006

*Daṇḍapādā*

Where the two feet are crossed in Svastika and then thrown up obliquely, that is called Daṇḍapādā Cārī by the doubtless [Śārṅgadeva]. 1006-7

*Aṅghritāḍitā*

Stretch the two feet, jump up, and clap the two soles of the feet in the air. This is Aṅghritāḍitā Cārī. 1007-8

*Jaṅghālaṅghanikā*

One foot which is slightly bent is kicked in the air by the other foot. This is accepted to be Jaṅghālaṅghanikā Cārī. 1008-9

*Alātā*

Alātā is that in which one foot kept behind is crossed by the other quickly. 1009

*Jaṅghāvartā*

Where the sole of the foot moving inwards is thrown at the back of the knee and the sole of the foot moving outwards is thrown at its side, it is Jaṅghāvartā. 1010

*Veṣṭana*

If one foot encircles the other foot, it is called Veṣṭana; some experts on Nṛtta call the same Valana. 1011

*Udveṣṭana*

Udveṣṭana is when after Veṣṭana at the back the foot is stretched out [in front]. 1012

*Utkṣepa*

The throwing up of the bent foot forward and backward up to the knee is called Utkṣepa by the learned. 1012-3

*Prṣthokṣepa*

If the same is done backwards alone, it is called Prṣthokṣepa. 1013

*Sūcī*

After placing one foot by the side on the thigh,<sup>1</sup> it is stretched [forward] pointing the end [i.e., the toes]. That is called Sūcī by [Śārṅgadeva], the favourite of Śiva. 1014

*Viddhā*

Of the two feet crossed in Svastika,<sup>2</sup> one is swung to and fro slightly in front and the other foot is Kuncita. This is known as Viddhā by the learned. 1015

*Prāvṛta*

Where the body is delicately turned and the foot is in Udvṛtta, that is to be known as Prāvṛta, the life of love. 1016

*Ullola*

Ullola is the waving of the two feet in the air one after the other. 1017

## POSTURES (STHĀNA-S)

Sthāna is a static posture; and Cārī is the movement. At the beginning and end of movement there

<sup>1</sup> The text should be *ūroh*.

<sup>2</sup> The text should be *svastikasya*.

must be a posture. One moves from a posture and stops after the movement. Thus the Cāri-s are invariably connected to the Sthāna-s. Therefore after them [the Cāri-s], the Sthāna-s are now explained. 1017-8

Any special position of the body which is motionless is called a Sthāna (posture). Vaiṣṇava, Samapāda, Vaiśākha, Maṇḍala, Āliḍha, and Pratyāliḍha—these are the six Sthāna-s for men. Now we shall name the three Sthāna-s for women, following the view of sage Bharata: Āyata, Avahittha, and Aśvagrānta. We name [also] four more suggested by sage Bharata by the words *athāpi ca*: Gatāgata, Valita, Moṭita, and Vinivartita. 1019-22

Now the twenty-three postures of the provincial (Deśī) type are given: Svastika, Vardhamāna, Nandyāvarta, Saṁhata, Samapāda, Ekapāda, Pṛṣṭhottānātala, Caturaśra, Pārṣṇividdha, Pārṣṇipārśvagata, Ekapārśvagata, Ekajānunata, Parāvṛtta, Samasūci, Viśamasūci, Khaṇḍasūci, Brāhma, Vaiṣṇava, Śaiva, Gāruḍa, Kūrmāsana, Nāgabandha, and Vṛṣabhāsana. 1022-6

Svastha, Madālasa, Krānta, Viṣkambhita, Utkāṭa, Srastālasa, Jānugata, Muktaajānu, and Vimukta—thus the sitting postures (Upaviṣṭasthānaka-s) are stated to be nine in number by Bharata. 1026-7

Sama, Ākuñcita, Prasārita, Vivartita, Udvāhita, and Nata—these are the six reclining postures (Suptasthāna-s). 1028

Thus there are six Sthāna-s for men, seven for women, and twenty-three others [Deśī], nine sitting

postures, and six reclining postures. All together are fifty-one, as given by [Śārṅgadeva], the doubtless expert on Karāṇa-s. Now I shall give the definitions of all of them, according to the view of the experts.

1029-31

# 1. POSTURES FOR MEN

## *Vaiṣṇava*

One foot is in the natural (Sama) position and the other foot in Pakṣasthita is kept in Tryaśra two and a half spans (Tāla-s) away; the shank is slightly bent and the limbs kept in Sauṣṭhava. This is called the Vaiṣṇava posture. It has Viṣṇu as its presiding deity. The sage (Bharata) says that this pose should be used by men of the superior (Uttama) and the normal (Madhyama) type in natural conversation and while engaged in various activities. Some others say that it is to be used only by the actor taking the role of Viṣṇu. Yet others say that it is to be used by the stage-manager (Sūtradhāra) and others controlling the positions of the Nāṭya.

1031-4

Pakṣasthita is that pose of the foot in which the toes point sideways. Tryaśra is the same if it faces slightly forward. Tāla is said by the learned to be the distance between the tips of the thumb and the middle finger of the hand fully stretched [i.e., a span]. When the waist, the knee, the elbows, the shoulders, and the head are properly held, the chest is raised, and the body is Sanna, that is Sauṣṭhava[?]. Sanna is the body resting in the natural position and Niṣaṇṇa is the motionless posture.

1035-8

In the case of superior (Uttama) and normal (Madhyama) characters, in Sauṣṭhava the feet must be in the Sama position [?] and the body must not be too upright [not tall]; [it should be] motionless, and not bent. 1038-9

This Vaiṣṇava Sthāna is the life of Caturaśra. The Vaiṣṇava Sthāna in which the two hands move about at the waist and the navel separately and the chest is raised is called Caturaśra. 1039-40

### *Samapāda*

Where Sauṣṭhava [of the limbs] is important and the two feet are kept in the Sama position at a distance of one span between them, that is Samapāda. It has the four-faced Brahmā as its presiding deity. It is prescribed in accepting the blessings given by Brahmins, in looking at birds of medium size, in indicating eagerness for being chosen by the bride [in Svayaṃvara], persons belonging to various sects, persons practising vows, those in aerial vehicles, and those in chariots. 1041-3

### *Vaiśākha*

When the two thighs are kept in the air above the ground at a distance of three and a half spans from each other and the two feet are kept on the ground pointing obliquely outwards, also at the same distance from each other, then it is called Vaiśākha Sthāna. Its presiding deity is Viśākha (Kārttikeya). It is employed in looking at big birds, in fighting,

etc., in urging horses, in speeding up, and in riding. 1043-5

### *Maṇḍala*

The two feet are kept on the ground with a distance of one span between them, pointing obliquely outwards. The hips and the knees are on the same level, with the thighs motionless (Niṣaṇṇa) above the ground at a distance of two and a half spans from each other. This is Maṇḍala, and it has Indra as its presiding deity. The sage (Bharata) recommended its employment in the use of weapons like the bow and Vajra, in riding on elephants, and in looking at birds like Garuḍa. Some others say that in Maṇḍala the two feet must be kept at a distance of four spans from each other. 1046-8

### *Āliḍha*

The left thigh is kept motionless in the air and slightly bent; the right foot is stretched forward to a distance of five spans. Both [feet] are oblique. This should be known as Āliḍha Sthāna, which has Rudra as its presiding deity. By this one should represent wrangling words of jealousy and anger increasing more and more and the slapping of wrestlers, etc., resulting from the Heroic or Furious sentiment. After aiming weapons in this posture, one must adopt the Pratyāliḍha posture [for releasing them]. 1049-51



*Pratyālīḍha*

Pratyālīḍha is considered to be the reverse of the position of the limbs taken in Ālīḍha. In this [posture], the weapons aimed [at the target] in the Ālīḍha posture are to be [actually] thrown. Its presiding deity is also Rudra, according to [Śārṅgadeva], the favourite of Śiva. 1052-3

Of these [six postures], the first four are seen in Nāṭya and Nṛtta. The use of the other two are desired by [some] experts only in Nāṭya. Others say that all the six postures can be used in the five types of dancing [Nāṭya, Nṛtta, Nṛtya, Lāsya, and Tāṇḍava]. 1053-4

## 2. POSTURES FOR WOMEN

*Āvata*

The left foot is put obliquely at a distance of one span; the right foot is in the natural (Sama) position. The face is cheerful, the chest raised, the waist not raised, the right hand kept on the hip, and the other in the Latā pose. This is called Āyata. Its presiding deity is Lakṣmī. 1055-6

This Sthāna is to be used when gaits of the wounded are desired; when conversation with friends, lovers, etc., is made; on first entering the stage; in offering handfuls of flowers; in anger arising out of desire or jealousy; in cracking the fingers; in threatening; in negation; in assuming anger owing to jealous love; in pride, profundity, and silence; in invocation and dismissal. Some say that this is to be assumed by women alone in Pūrvarāṅga; others say that either men or women may

adopt this posture in the introduction (Praveśa) and that the posture must be assumed by whoever [first] enters the stage. The entry into the stage, etc., are to be made after assuming the Āyata posture and suitable movements of the hands and feet should be adopted for them. This is the view stated by Abhinavagupta. 1057-62

### *Avahittha*

Avahittha is the same [as Āyata] with the feet reversed [i.e., the left foot in Sama and the right in Tryaśra]. This Sthāna, of which the presiding deity is Durgā, should be used in anxiety, deliberation, satisfaction, natural conversation, wonder, looking at one's own body with pride arising from great personal charm; in looking towards the path of the lover, and in sportiveness, grace, and charm. It is indicative of the mood of Dissimulation (Avahittha). 1063-5

### *Aśvagrānta*

One foot in Sūcī pose is placed at the heel of the other foot kept in the natural (Sama) position, or on its own side in the Sama position at a distance of one span, as for mounting a horse. This is called Aśvagrānta. This Sthāna should be used in stumbling; in holding up clothes which slip down; in hiding what ought to be concealed; in receiving bunches of flowers; in taking hold of the branch of a tree; in natural conversation; in Vibhrama; and in Lalita. Bhārati is its presiding deity. 1065-8

*Gatāgata*

When the female dancer, about to move forward, hesitates with one foot raised, it is called Gatāgata, as it is neither going nor standing. 1069

*Valita*

The body is slightly twisted around; the foot which is in the direction in which the body is twisted touches the ground with the little toe; the other foot touches the ground with its big toe. This is called Valita, and is used in looking with desire. 1070-1

*Moṭita*

One foot is kept in the Sama position, the other in Kuñcita with the toes half touching the ground[?]. The two hands move up in front in the Karkaṭa pose. This is Moṭita. Its use is prescribed in all the stages of love. 1071-2

*Vinivartita*

The same at the back with the positions of the feet reversed is Vinivartita. 1073

## 3. DEŚI POSTURES

*Svastika*

When the two feet in Saṁhata posture are bent (Kuñcita) and crossed in Svastika with the two little toes touching each other, that [posture] is called Svastika by the learned. 1073-4

*Vardhamāna*

In Vardhamāna the two feet are oblique with the heels touching each other. 1074

*Nandyāvarta*

If in this posture [i.e., Vardhamāna] itself, the distance between the feet is six Aṅgula-s or one Vitasti only [12 Aṅgula-s], then it is called Nandyāvarta. 1075

*Samhata*

The body is in the natural position, the big toes of the feet touch each other, and the ankles are also close together. This is Samhata, used in offering handfuls of flowers. 1076

*Samapāda*

Where the body is in the natural position and the feet are kept straight at a distance of one Vitasti from each other, it is called Samapāda. So says Śārṅgadeva. 1077

*Ekapāda*

If one foot is in the Sama position and the other touches by its outer side [the other leg] above the knee on its outer side, then it is called Ekapāda. 1078

*Prṣṭhottānātala*

Where one foot touches the ground at the back by the back of its toes and the other foot is kept in

front in the Sama position, that is called Prṣṭhottānātala by the learned. 1079

### *Caturaśra*

If in the Nandyāvarta posture the distance between the feet is eighteen Aṅgula-s, then it is called the Caturaśra posture by experts. 1080

### *Pārṣṇividdha*

In Pārṣṇividdha, the heel touches the big toe. 1081

### *Pārṣṇipārśvagata*

In Pārṣṇipārśvagata, one heel is kept on the inner side of the other. 1081

### *Ekapārśvagata*

If, in front of one foot kept in the Sama position, the other foot is placed obliquely on the external side, it is called Ekapārśvagata. 1082

### *Ekajānunata*

If one foot is kept in the Sama position and the other is placed obliquely with the knee bent at a distance of four Aṅgula-s, then it is Ekajānunata. 1083

### *Parāvṛtta*

In Parāvṛtta, the big toe and the little toe are level with the heel [of the other foot]. 1084

*Samasūci*

When the two legs are stretched obliquely with the heels, shanks, and thighs touching the ground, it is called Samasūci. 1084-5

*Viṣamasūci*

When the two feet in Sūcī pose are stretched apart simultaneously, one forward and the other backward, it is called Viṣamasūci by experts. Some say that in this the two legs must have the knees and ankles touching the ground. 1085-6

*Khaṇḍasūci*

When one foot is in Kuñcita and the other is stretched obliquely with its thigh and heel touching the ground, it is called Khaṇḍasūci. 1087

*Brāhma*

If one foot is in the natural (Sama) position and the other assumes the Kuñcita pose at the back and is [then] thrown up keeping the knee-joint straight, it is called Brāhma. 1088

*Vaiṣṇava*

Keeping one foot in Sama, if the other is slightly bent (Kuñcita) and stretched forward obliquely, then it is Vaisnava. 1089

*Śaiva*

The left foot is in Sama and the other is raised in the Kuñcita pose to the level of the [other] knee-cap. This is called Śaiva. 1090

*Gāruḍa*

When the left leg is bent in front and the other leg touches the ground at the back with the knee, it is called Gāruḍa. 1091

*Kūrmāsana*

When the right leg touches the ground with its knee and the outer side of the ankle, and the left foot is in the Sama position, it is known as Kūrmāsana. 1092

*Nāgabandha*

When, after sitting, the right shank is placed on the back of the left thigh, it is stated to be Nāgabandha by the expert on Karaṇa-s, [Śārṅgadeva]. 1093

*Vṛṣabhāsana*

If the knees are kept on the ground together or separated, it is called Vṛṣabhāsana. This posture has Sauṣṭhava. 1094

## 4. SITTING POSTURES

*Svastha*

Where the two feet are bent and spread out, the chest is slightly raised, and the two hands placed at the thigh and the waist [respectively], that posture is called Svastha. 1095

*Madālasa*

One foot is stretched out a little, the other is placed on the seat, and the head is bent on one side. This is called Madālasa. It is employed in intoxication, calamity, despondency, anxiety, and separation. 1096-7

*Krānta*

When the two hands are placed on the chin, the head rests on the shoulder, and there are a few tears in the eyes, that is called Krānta. It is used in solitude, when under arrest, and when suffering from grief. 1097-8

*Viṣkambhita*

When the two thighs are spread out, the arms and legs are spread out beautifully, and the eyes are closed, it is called Viṣkambha. It is used in Yogic posture, in meditation, and in sitting naturally. 1099-1100

*Utkāṭa*

When the heels and the hips are on the same level and the feet are on the ground in the natural position, it is Utkāṭa. [It is used] in Yogic posture, in meditation, in chanting [religious songs, etc.,] in the morning or evening, etc. 1100-1

*Srastālasa*

When the two hands are free and hanging loosely, the body inactive, and the eyes dull in appearance,



it is Srastālasa. It is used in failure, fatigue, intoxication, disease, swoon, and fear. 1101-2

### *Jānugata*

The posture with the knees kept on the ground is accepted to be Jānugata. It is used in sacrifices (Homa), in propitiating gods, in begging piteously, in looking at animals, in threatening wild animals, and in pacifying angry persons. 1103-4

### *Muktajānu*

When one of the knees in the Utkāṣa sitting posture is kept on the ground, the posture is called Muktajānu. It is used in pacifying the anger of a beloved woman, in pouring ghee in the sacrificial fire, and in the appeasing of great persons by good people. 1104-5

### *Vimukta*

Vimukta is falling on the ground, and is used in Hāva, weeping, etc. 1106

## 5. RECLINING POSTURES

### *Sama*

Lying down with the face turned upwards and the hands loose and free is Sama. 1106

### *Ākuñcita*

[Lying down] with the limbs contracted and the knees touching each other is called Ākuñcita. Its use

is stated by Śārṅgadeva to be in indicating persons feeling cold. 1107

### *Prasārita*

Lying down pillowed on one arm with the knees stretched is called Prasārita. It is used in sound sleep. 1108

### *Vivartita*

Lying down with the face turned downwards is Vivartita. It is used in indicating someone wounded by weapons, etc. 1109

### *Udvāhita*

Lying down with the head resting on the shoulder and the elbow fixed on the ground is called Udvāhita. It is used as a playful pose in front of the lord. 1109-10

### *Nata*

Lying down with the shanks slightly separated and the two hands resting loosely is Nata. It is to be used in sorrow, fatigue, laziness, etc. 1110-1

## STYLE (VṚTTI)

Style (Vṛtti) is the verbal, mental, and physical activity useful for achieving the aims of human existence (Dharma, Artha, and Kāma). It is to be understood that there are four types [of Vṛtti-s]: Bhārati, Sāttvatī,

Ārabhaṭī, and Kaiśikī. Their origin is now described  
 Bhāratī was born from the Rgveda, Sāttvatī from the  
 Yajurveda, Ārabhaṭī from the Atharvaveda, and  
 Kaiśikī from the Sāmaveda. 1111-3

Verbal activity employed mainly by actors,  
 which predominantly consists of sentences in Sanskrit,  
 is accepted to be Bhāratī-*ṛtti*. 1114

The mind is called Sattva as it consists of that  
 [consciousness] which manifests the spiritual essence  
 (Sattva); cheerfulness, bravery, generosity, etc., that  
 arise in the mind are Sāttvata-s; and the activity which  
 is mainly expressive of such mental dispositions is  
 Sāttvatī-*ṛtti*. It is full of the Heroic, Furious, and  
 Marvellous sentiments and is lacking in the Erotic  
 and Pathetic sentiments and the feeling of Detach-  
 ment (Nirveda) since it is based on the vigorous  
 style. 1115-6

The Ārabhaṭī-*ṛtti* is the physical activity of  
 enthusiastic soldiers in proximity [the term being thus  
 derived from the words *ārāt*, 'near', and *bhaṭa*,  
 'soldier'] and is used in forceful sentiments such as  
 Raudra. It involves much supernatural magic and  
 adds to the variety [in the depiction] of battles. 1117-8

That which is produced by the gracefulness of  
 words and physical gestures, rich in pleasant songs  
 and dances, and full of the Erotic sentiment, its  
 essence being charm, is declared to be the Kaiśikī-*ṛtti*  
 by the doubtless [Śārṅgadeva]. Through beauty and  
 grace, this style may be employed in sentiments like  
 the Furious also. 1118-9

Āmukha, Prahasana, Vīthī, and Prarocanā—these are the four parts of the Bhāratī-vṛtti according to the sage [Bharata]. The Āmukha has five varieties: Udghātyaka, Avalagita, Kathodghāta, Pravartaka, and Prayogātīśaya. The Sāttvati-vṛtti is of four types: Utthāpaka, Parivartaka, Saṃlāpaka, and Saṃghātaka. In the Ārabhaṭī also there are four varieties: Saṃkṣiptaka, Avapāta, Vastūthāpana, and Saṃpheta. In Kaiśikī the four varieties are Narma, Narmasphuṇja, Narmasphoṭa, and Narmagarbha. Narma is of three types: Paracittākṣepaka, Paropālambhaka, and Roṣeṣyāsūcaka. 1120-6

These are applicable [mainly] in dramas and hence their definitions and illustrations are not given by the doubtless [Śārṅgadeva], fearful of increasing the volume of the text. 1126-7

Literature, music, and dance do not shine if devoid of style (Vṛtti); hence these Vṛtti-s explained by Bharata must be understood [even by those interested in dancing, etc.] 1127-8

### WAYS OF USING WEAPONS (NYĀYA-S)

The movement of the body suited to protect oneself from the enemy's weapons or to discharge one's own weapons on the enemy is called Nyāya. Bhārata, Sāttvata, Vārṣagaṇya, and Kaiśika are its four varieties [corresponding] respectively to the four Vṛtti-s. For understanding the definitions of these [Nyāya-s], I shall

now state the Pravicāra-s. Pravicāra-s are those excellent (*prakṛṣṭa*) and varied (*vicitra*) movements and gaits which are meant for discharging weapons. 1128-31

Carrying the shield with the left hand and the sword with the right hand, stretch the hands out in front and draw them back; then rotate the shield on either side; flourish the sword around the head; the hand with the sword is turned round at the wrist encircling the head and the cheek; the shield must also be turned round near the head. 1132-4

In Bhārata [Nyāya] this is the rule, along with the discharge of the weapon once at the waist [of the enemy]. In Sāttvata too it is the same procedure, but the flourishing of the weapon should be done at one's back and the weapon should strike [the enemy] at the feet. The Pravicāra ordained for Vārṣagaṇya is similar to Sāttvata, but here in addition the shield must also be flourished at the back and the hand with the weapon should be flourished at the shoulder or the chest, and it must strike the chest. In Kaiśika, [the procedure is] as in Bhārata, but the weapon should fall on the head. 1135-8

In these Nyāya-s weapons like the javelin, the spear, the bow, the Vajra, etc., may also be used, with the limbs in Sauṣṭhava. The Pravicāra-s are not attractive if performed without Sauṣṭhava. The striking should be done only nominally, not actually. Or by means of magic or tricks it must appear as [actual] striking. These Nyāya-s are to be employed along with Cāri-s in discharging the weapons. 1139-41

## MAṆḌALA-S

The Maṇḍala has already been stated to be a combination of Cārī-s; now the different varieties [of Maṇḍala-s] are explained by [Śārṅgadeva], the intelligent expert on Karaṇa-s. 1142

Bhramara, Āskandita, Āvarta, Śakaṭāśya, Aḍḍita, Samotsarita, Adhyardha, Eḍakākriḍita, Piṣṭakuṭṭa, and Cāṣagata—these are said to be the ten Earthly Maṇḍala-s. Atikrānta, Daṇḍapāda, Krānta, Lalita-saṃcara, Sūcividdha, Vāma-viddha, Vicitra, Vihṛta, Alāta, and Lalita—these are said to be the ten Aerial Maṇḍala-s. Depending on the preponderance of the Earthly or Aerial Cārī-s [constituting the Maṇḍala-s], the Maṇḍala-s are also referred to as Earthly or Aerial. Their employment is in discharging weapons. The Aerial Maṇḍala-s are important in the movements [depicting] fighting. In enumerating the Cārī-s [in each Maṇḍala], I shall refer to the foot [right or left] by the name of the Cārī. A Maṇḍala is not spoilt by the omission or addition of some Cārī-s. 1143-8

## 1. EARTHL Y MAṆḌALA-S

*Bhramara*

The right foot is Janita and the left foot, Spandita; then again the right foot is Śakaṭāśya and the left foot, Avaspandita; or the right foot is Bhramara and the left, Spandita; again the right is Śakaṭāśya and the left, Cāṣagati; again the right foot is Bhramara, and

finally the left foot is Spandita. This is called Bhramara by the learned. 1149-51

### *Āskandita*

The right foot is Bhramara and the left foot, Aḍḍita; again the right is Bhramara, Śakaṭāśya, and Ūrūdvṛtta successively, and the left foot is Adhyardhika and Bhramara; then again the right foot is Spandita and the left is Śakaṭāśya, and with that the ground is stamped firmly. This is accepted by the wise as Āskandita. 1151-3

### *Āvarta*

The right foot is Janita and the left foot, Sthitāvarta, then Śakaṭāśya, Eḍakākriḍita, Ūrūdvṛtta, Aḍḍita, Janita, and Samotsaritamattalli successively; then the right foot is Śakaṭāśya and then Ūrūdvṛtta; then again the left foot is Cāṣagati and the right, Spandita twice; then the left foot is Śakaṭāśya and the other foot is Bhramara; afterwards the left foot is Cāṣagati. This is called Āvarta. 1154-7

### *Śakaṭāśya*

Janita, then the seven beginning with Sthitāvarta mentioned before [for the Āvarta Maṇḍala] in their respective order; then the right foot is Śakaṭāśya and the other, Spandita; then the foot is Śakaṭāśya successively till the Maṇḍala is completed. This is called Śakaṭāśya by the experts. 1158-9

*Aḍḍita*

The right foot is [successively] Udghaṭṭita, Baddha, Samotsaritamattalli, Ardhamattalli, and Apakrānta; then again the same foot is Udvṛtta, Vidyudbhrānta, Bhramara, and Spandita; the left foot is Śakatāśya, then the other foot is Cāṣagati twice; then the left foot is Aḍḍita and Adhyardhika; and then the right foot is Cāṣagati; the left is Samotsaritamattalli, Mattalli, and Bhramara; then the right foot becomes Span-dita and stamps the ground. This is called Aḍḍita Maṇḍala. 1160-3

*Samotsarita*

Take the Samapāda position and stretch the hands upwards keeping them close together; then with Āveṣṭana and Udveṣṭana movements bring them down to the waist; then make a circular movement first with the right foot and then with the left, and then stretch out the left foot. Thus successively moving round in all the four directions is called Samotsarita. 1164-6

*Adhyardha*

The right foot is successively Janita and Spandita; then the left does the four Cārī-s, Adhyardhika, etc., given for the Aḍḍita [Maṇḍala]; then the right foot is Śakatāśya, and at the end there is a circular movement in all the four directions. This is Adhyardha Maṇḍala to be used in wrestling. 1167-8



*Eḍakākriḍita*

After keeping the feet on the ground as in the Sūcividdha Karaṇa, do Sūcī and Viddhā Cārī-s; then [perform] Eḍakākriḍitā and Bhramarī [Cārī-s] fully; then with the feet in Sūcividdha as before, do Ākṣiptā Cārī-s; finally move round in the four directions. This is known as Eḍakākriḍita. 1169-71

*Piṣṭakuṭṭa*

The right foot is Sūcī and the left is Apakrānta; then the right and left are several times alternately Bhujaṅgatrāsita; and at the end the circular movement in all directions (Maṇḍalabhrānti) is performed. This is called Piṣṭakuṭṭa. 1171-2

*Cāṣagata*

Cāṣagati feet through out, and turning round in a circle at the end is Cāṣagata, used in wrestling. 1173

## 2. AERIAL MAṆḌALA-S

*Atikrānta*

The right foot is Janita and then Śakaṭāśya and the left foot is Alāta; then the right is Pārśvakraṇta and the other is Sūcī, and again the same [left] foot is Bhramara. Then the right foot is Udvṛtta and the left, Alātaka. Or the two feet in the Chinna Karaṇa do the outward turn (Bāhyabhramarī) in which there is Recaka to the left side. Then the left foot is Atikrānta and the right foot, Daṇḍapāda. This is

called Atikrānta Maṇḍala by [Śārṅgadeva], the favourite of Śiva. 1174-7

### *Daṇḍapāda*

The right foot is Janita and then Daṇḍapāda and then the left is Sūcī and Bhramara; then the right is Udvṛtta and the left is Alāta; then the right is Pārśvakraṇta and the left foot is Bhujaṅgaatrāsita and Atikrānta; then the right is Daṇḍapāda and the other foot is Sūcī and Bhramara. This is called Daṇḍapāda Maṇḍala by the learned. 1177-80

### *Krānta*

The right foot is Sūcī and the left Apakrānta; then the right foot is Pārśvakraṇta and the left foot in the same way [i.e., in Pārśvakraṇta] moves round in all directions; then the left foot is Sūcī and the right, Apakrānta. This is called Krānta [Maṇḍ. 'a] by the great, and indicates natural movement. 1180-2

### *Lalitasamcara*

The right foot is successively Ūrdhvajānu and Sūcī, the left foot is Apakrānta, and the right is again Pārśvakraṇta. Then the left foot is Sūcī and Bhramara successively and the right foot is Pārśvakraṇta. Then the left is Atikrānta and the right, Sūcī; the left is then Apakrānta and the other foot is then Pārśvakraṇta; then the left foot is Atikrānta; then after keeping both feet as in the Chinna Karaṇa, turn

round outwards (Bāhyabhramarī) with the left foot. This is to be known as Lalitasamcara. 1182-6

### *Sūcīviddha*

The right foot is Sūcī and then Bhramara; then the left foot is Pārśvagrānta and Apagrānta, and the right is Sūcī; then the left is Apagrānta and the right, Pārśvagrānta. This is called Sūcīviddha [Maṇḍala] by the ancient [scholars]. 1186-8

### *Vāmaiddha*

The right foot is Sūcī and the left, Apagrānta; then the right is Daṇḍapāda and the left is Sūcī and Bhramaraka; then the right is Pārśvagrānta and the left is Ākṣipta; then the right is Daṇḍapāda and Ūrūdvṛtta also; and the left, Sūcī, Bhramara, and Alāta successively; then the right is Pārśvagrānta and the left, Atigrānta. This is called Vāmaiddha Maṇḍala by Śārṅgadeva. 1188-91

### *Vicitra*

The right foot is Janita, Ūrūdvṛtta, and Vicyava; then the seven beginning with Sthitāvarta given for Āvarta [Maṇḍala]; then the left foot is Spandita and then the right is Pārśvagrānta; then the left foot is Bhujāṅgatrāsita and the right, Atigrānta; then the left is Udvṛtta and the right, Alāta; then the left foot is Pārśvagrānta or Sūcī; the right foot is Vikṣipta, and the left, Apagrānta. This is called Vicitra [Maṇḍala].

1192-5

*Vihṛta*

The right foot is Vicyava, Spandita, and Pārśvakrānta successively; then the left foot is Spandita; then the right foot is Udvṛtta and the left, Alāta; then the right foot is Sūcī and the left foot, Pārśvakrānta; then the right foot is Ākṣipta and after turning round anti-clockwise and clockwise, becomes Daṇḍapāda; then the left is Sūcī and Bhramara successively; then the right foot is Bhujaṅgaatrāsita and the left, Atikrānta. This is Vihṛta Maṇḍala.

1195-8

*Alāta*

Do the Sūcī and Bhramarī Cārī-s with the left foot successively, Bhujaṅgaatrāsītā Cārī with the right, then Alātā with the left foot; having done these Cārī-s six or seven times in sequence, quickly move around in the four directions in Parimaṇḍalita form; then the right foot does Apakrāntā and the left, Atikrāntā and Bhramarikā with delicate movements. This is called Alāta Maṇḍala by the learned.

1199-1202

*Lalita*

The right foot is Sūcī and the left is Apakrānta; the right is then Pārśvakrānta and Bhujaṅgaatrāsita; then the left foot is Atikrānta and the right, Ākṣipta; then the left is successively Atikrānta, Ūrūdvṛtta, and Alāta; then the right is Pārśvakrānta and the left, Sūcī; the right is again Apakrānta; the left is Atikrānta and steps delicately. This is called Lalita Maṇḍala.

1202-5

## LĀSYĀṄGA-S [OF THE DEŚĪ TYPE]

Cāli, Cālivaḍa, Laḍhi, Sūka, Uroṅgaṇa, Dhasaka, Aṅgaḥāra, Oyāraka, Vihasī, and Mana—these ten elements of Lāsyā are known in the Deśī style, according to the experts on Deśī style. 1206-7

*Cāli*

Cāli is the simultaneous movement of the feet, thighs, hips, and arms. [It should be] soft, graceful, and attractive, in accordance with the Tāla-s and neither too quick nor too slow, and mostly oblique. 1207-9

*Cālivaḍa*

The same is called Cālivaḍa when performed quickly and mostly with straight movements. 1209

*Laḍhi*

Laḍhi is accepted to be the simultaneous movement of the hips and the arms, which is soft, oblique, and graceful. 1209-10

*Sūka*

Sūka is the rhythmic movement, either slow or quick, and full of feminine charm (Hāva), of the ears shining with beautiful ornaments. 1210-1

*Uroṅgaṇa*

The graceful oblique movement, slow or quick, of the breasts and the shoulders is called Uroṅgaṇa by the experts. 1211-2

*Dhasaka*

Dhasaka is the rhythmic bending down of the breasts with extreme grace. 1212

*Aṅgahāra*

The gradual bending of the two halves of the body in the form of a bow, gracefully to time is Aṅgahāra. So says the doubtless [Śārṅgadeva]. 1213

*Oyāraka*

Oyāraka is accepted to be the slightly oblique, downward movement of the head. 1214

*Vihāsī*

Vihāsī is the smile which is full of the sentiment of love, which is different from the trained [smile], and which has an extremely subtle and novel charm. 1214-5

*Mana*

Mana is accepted to be that which has the tempo of the Sthāya belonging to songs, etc. 1215

## REKHĀ

Rekhā is declared to be that position of the body, attracting the mind and the eyes, where there is a harmonious combination of the various [poses of the] major limbs (Aṅga-s) like the head, eyes, and hands. 1216

## PROCEDURE FOR PRACTICE

After worshipping the Lord of Obstacles (Gaṇa-pati), the Goddess of Speech (Sarasvatī), Brahmā, Viṣṇu, and the great Śiva, the stage, the presiding deities [of the stage], the cymbals and musical instruments, in their respective order, and also the teacher, the dancing girls, the two pillars and the bar, by means of fragrant unguents like musk and sandal paste, white fragrant flowers, incense, and lights, various offerings of food and dress, betel leaves and oblations, the intelligent dancer should start the practice at an auspicious time. 1217-20

A bar should be placed on two pillars, horizontally, at the level of the girl's breast so as to be held [conveniently] by the hands for support. Putting on a white dress and tightening the jacket, the chaste and intelligent girl should, supporting herself on the bar, practise the movements of the limbs and learn Valana, Sthāpana, Rekhā, Tālasāmya (tallying with the time-beat), the Laya-s and the Aṅga-s and all the accessories of the Lāsyā dance explained before, and also learn to follow the singing and the instruments. 1220-3

## A PERSON FIT FOR DANCING

Generally in Nṛtta, the person fit to perform the dance movements is a female dancer. [Such] persons are well known to be of three types: Mugdhā (shy), Madhyā (normal), and Pragalbhā (bold and confident). 1224

The definition of Mugdhā, etc., is proclaimed respectively by the three types of youthfulness. 1225

The first type of youthfulness [adolescence] is accepted to be that which is eager for the kind of amorous dalliance in which the lips, the full breasts, the cheeks, hips, and thighs are concealed [due to shyness]. 1225-6

The second type of youthfulness is explained by the learned as the life of Love, with heavy thighs and hips, and with large, hard, high, and firm breasts.

1226-7

The third type of youthfulness is known to be that which has a maddening charm, is clever in perfect amorous dalliance, and has feelings tutored by Cupid [himself]. 1227-8

There is also a fourth type of youthfulness in which there is little enthusiasm; and in which the lips, the big breasts, cheeks, and hips are weak [and exhausted]. A person having this type of youthfulness is called Atipragalbhā (over-mature). Since it tends towards old age and is devoid of charm, it is not accepted by the learned.[as suitable for dancing].

1228-30

A child, being devoid of [originality of] imagination, does not please the learned, as a suitable person for dancing. 1230

### MERITS OF THE DANCER

Beauty of limbs, perfection of form, a charming and full face, large eyes, lips red like the Bimba fruit,



attractive teeth, a neck beautiful like the spiral conch, arms straight like moving creepers, slender waist, hips which are not too heavy,<sup>1</sup> thighs resembling the trunk of an elephant [or having the form of the metacarpus], not being too tall, crippled, or too fat, not having prominent veins, being conspicuous in charm, beauty, sweetness, courage, and generosity, and being either fair or dark in colour—these are accepted by the learned as the merits of the dancer. 1231-4

That dancer who by means of delicate movements of the body, beautiful rhythms, and correct timing seems to bring out the very letters of the songs and instrumental music, and who seems to make visible through her limbs the sound of the songs and instruments and dances carrying her limbs like flowers, fully manifesting the Rāsa, is stated to be the best dancer by the expert on Karaṇa-s, [Śārṅgadeva]. 1234-6

### DEFECTS OF THE DANCER

The lack of these [merits] severally or in combination constitutes the defect. The merits and defects of the dancer must be well examined if the dance is to be successful. It is stated in the *Mārkaṇḍeyapurāṇa*<sup>2</sup> that the dance depends entirely on the dancer. The dance of a beautiful dancer is successful; success depends

<sup>1</sup> The text should be *madhyānatisthūla*.

<sup>2</sup> The reference is found only in the third section of *Viṣṇu-dharmottarapurāṇa*.

on nothing but beauty. Real dance is that in which the dancer is beautiful; the rest is imitation. 1237-9

### DECORATIONS OF THE DANCER

At the back, a waving [loose] knot of very black, glossy, and abundant hair with bright strings of flowers on it; or a straight and long braid [of hair] decorated with a string of pearls; the forehead having curly locks of hair arranged on it; a beauty-spot made on the forehead with musk, sandal-paste, etc.; the eyes decorated with collyrium; on the ears, *tālapattra* (cylindrical ear-ornaments) of brilliant beauty; the two rows of teeth lighting up the stage with their radiance; the cheeks marked with streaks of musk; a garland of pearls round the neck; strings of large pearls decorating the breasts; the forearm having golden bangles studded with fine gems; the fingers having rings set with rubies, sapphires, diamonds, etc.; the body smeared with sandal-paste or with saffron; garments of white silk, etc.; a fine jacket or a short petticoat with a tight-fitting bodice, depending on the customs of various places—these or other things should be suitably used as decorations for the dancer who may be dark or fair in colour. So says [Śārṅgadeva], the devotee of Śiva. 1239-47

### THE TEACHER

A man of personality, who knows the science of dancing [i.e., the movements of the body, its

dependence on timing and tempo, etc.]; who is clever in beginning and concluding [the songs and instrumental music], who knows well the [three] Graha-s [Sama, Atīta, and Anāgata of the Tāna]; who knows how to play on the [various] instruments; who is well versed in the knowledge handed down by tradition [through teachers]; who knows the truth about the beauty of sounds; who is conversant with the excess or deficiency of the Sthāya-s [of Rāga-s]; clever in the tempos [Druta, Madhya, and Vilambita] and time-measurements [Tāla-s like Caccatpuṭa]; who can create instrumental compositions (Vādyaprabandha-s); who is an expert in Mukhavādyā (the sounds of drums, etc., repeated orally by the cymbal-bearer); who can originate new styles [in song, dance, and instrumental music]; who is clever in teaching pupils; who can establish the rules about dance, songs, and instrumental music; in whose heart the dancer enters, or who himself enters the heart of the dancer; who is capable of attracting people, and who knows the defects and the [proper] performance of dances—he is the dance teacher. 1247-51

### THE DANCE TROUPE (SAMPRADĀYA)

Where there is one excellent Mukharin (leader of the troupe);<sup>1</sup> one Pratimukharin (chief assistant); two

<sup>1</sup> For descriptions of the various instruments, see Vol. III, Vādyādhyāya.

Āvajadhara-s [those who play the Āvaja, a kind of percussion instrument]; two [players on the] Aḍḍāvaja (percussion instrument); two Karaṭādhara-s [those who play the Karaṭā, a kind of percussion instrument]; thirty-two good Mardaladhara-s (Mardala drum players); two Tāladhara-s (cymbal players); eight persons playing bell-metal cymbals; two persons playing on the Kāhala (a wind instrument); two flute-players having a discriminating taste who can play with distinct, sweet, and full sound, (four of these persons who can play with a sweet sound would be better); two main singers along with eight [other] singers; two main female singers along with eight other female singers; and among these two, one dancer, with all the merits [of a dancer], brightening the troupe; all these being beautiful and beautifully decorated, clever in synchronizing the songs, etc., and with their hearts blooming with joy—that is the best troupe, and it is called Kuṭīla in the world; half of that is called Madhyama (medium); less than that, is called Kaniṣṭha (small). 1252-8

### MERITS AND DEFECTS OF THE TROUPE

Following the Mukharin, his tempo (Laya), filling any deficiencies, and following the timing (Tāla)—these four are the merits of the Kuṭīla [troupe]. The lack of any of these merits is a defect in the troupe. 1258-9

## THE PURE STYLE (ŚUDDHA-PADDHATI)

When the chief spectator has taken his seat along with those learned in music and dancing, the members of the troupe enter the stage and, standing, harmonize the various instruments and with concentrated mind play the Melāpaka Prabandha, and then Gajara. Then behind the curtain, the dancer should take flowers in her folded hands and stand taking a posture (Sthānaka) which has Sauṣṭhava.<sup>1</sup> Then when the Upaśama is begun and the curtain has been removed, the dancer, attracting the minds of the spectators, should enter the stage. 1260-3

When the players are playing instrumental compositions like the Upaśama, she should throw the handful of flowers at the centre of the stage in a beautiful curve, for the eldest god (Indra) himself occupies the centre of the stage. Then, full of joy, the dancer should dance carefully by means of the Nṛttāṅga-s alone, along with the playing of the Upaśama. 1264-6

Pada, Otā, Kavita, Malapa, Avatsaka, Rigoṇi, and Tuḍukā—while these compositions are being played in their entirety, in a definite order, or in any order made to suit one's wishes, the dance should be performed on the left and the right (Viṣamāṅga), or forwards (Samāṅga), or both [i.e., in all three directions]. 1266-8

Then when the pure Prabandha-s are being sung in any order one likes, the dancer must perform the three types of dance, after making her appearance. At

<sup>1</sup> Cf. v. 1037.

the end of the Gajara, if the Upaśama is not played, the dancer must enter [the stage] in the beginning [of the Gajara]. So say the experts. 1268-70

Thus this method is explained; it is called Pariviḍi by the people. Others say that the playing of the Samahasta [Pāṭa] <sup>1</sup> must be before the entry [of the dancer]. According to them the entry is [made] standing in the Samapāda posture with the proper Sauṣṭhava, while Pāṭa-s like Samahasta [are being played]. 1270-2

Some [scholars] say that the songs and the Mukha-vādyā must be employed separately. Some people desire the use of songs, etc., one after the other. 1272-3

### GAUṆDALĪ-VIDHI

Devoid of vigorous instrumental compositions [like Otā and Kavita] and of songs like Elā, and accompanied by [vocal] Sālagasūḍa compositions li. . Dhruva,<sup>2</sup> [the dancer] dances with gentle movements of the limbs, using the Lāsyāṅga-s. [She] herself sings and plays on the Trivalī instrument. That dancer is called Gauṇḍalī. Here some [authorities] do not accept the playing on the instrument [as necessary for the Gauṇḍalī]; the wearing of the Trivalī on the shoulder is not decent for a girl. The same person [Gauṇḍalī] who does not sing vocally is called a Dumb Gauṇḍalī (Mūkagaṇḍalī). The Gauṇḍalī's dress is said by

<sup>1</sup> See vol. III, Vādyādhyāya, v. 843.

<sup>2</sup> See vol. II, Prabandhādhyāya, v. 311 ff.

experts to be that of the Karṇāṭaka country. Figuratively her dance is also called Gaunḍalī. 1273-7

The style of that dance is called Gaunḍalīvidhi by those who know it. It is also called the provincial style (Deśipaddhati) [in contrast to the pure style]. We now describe it. 1278

The members of the troupe (Sāmpradāyika-s) are dressed in the Karṇāṭaka style. As in the previous case, the instruments (Ātodya-s) are played simultaneously. Then Melāpaka is to be played carefully in Ekatālī; then Gajara is played in any Tāla. When [its] Upaśama section has been begun with Niḥsāru or Ekatālī, the dancer enters and throws a handful of flowers at the centre of the stage. Then after showing [separately] the movements of the limbs to the left and the right and forwards, dance movements in all three directions are performed only at the Upaśama of Gajara. 1279-82

Then along with Rigoṇī [one of the Vādyaprabandha-s] accompanied by Aḍḍatāla, Niḥsāru, and Ekatālī [Sālagasūḍa vocal compositions] and afterwards with Avatsa and Kavita [Vādyaprabandha-s], without any restrictions of Tāla, the dance should be successively performed. 1283-4

Again [she] should dance in various ways accompanied by Rigoṇī and Uṭṭavaṇa [Vādyaprabandha-s]. When the instruments have stopped and the Sthāna [Mandra etc.] has been indicated by the flutists (Vāṁśika-s), she sings together with them. Then the Gaunḍalī dancer recites the Sthāyin with the fourfold

Ālāpa of the Rāga. Or another important singer may make various Ālāpa-s [of the Rāga]. After singing the Dhruva completely with any Tāla other than Maṇṭhaka and Pratimaṇṭha, while the Jakkā [Yati] is played, and the Dhruvakhaṇḍa is being constantly sung softly by singers with Melaka-s, some dance which is attractive to the mind by displaying [the Lāsyaṅga] Mana, is performed. Then when the vocal and the instrumental music has stopped, while dancing to the various Sthāya-s, Dhruvapada-s should also be frequently danced to. 1284-9

Having danced to some [of the Sthāya-s] with the Tāla alone of the song [without the words], to others with the Tāla and the words of the songs, [the Sthāya-s being] neither too long nor too low, and pleasant with sweetness and dignity, and full of charm; or [having done them] without any Tāla in the beginning, the later portions having the proper Tāla-s, the dance should be ended in the Dhruva portion [of the song]. At the Kalāsa [the conclusion], the players should beat the drums simultancously. At the conclusion the dancer must remain motionless as in a picture. 1290-2

Thus doing, the procedure having been adopted again as before, the dancer must perform the dance when the Dhruva portion is being sung. Then when the instrumental artists play the Ābhoga [last section of the Dhruva], [the dancer] must again dance. When the end of the song is near, the Gaunḍalī dancer must vigorously perform the dance with various dignified Cārī movements and Cālaka-s. 1292-5



Here [at the end of the Dhruva Khaṇḍa] again the beating of the drum is desired. Then [the music] being brought to an end simultaneously by the instruments, the conclusion [of the dance] should be made.

1295-6

After thus performing the dance with the Dhruva [vocal composition], the dance should be performed in turn with Maṇṭhaka, etc., in the same way as with the Dhruva. The distinctive features [alone] of these [dances] are now explained.

1296-7

In Maṇṭha, etc., there is dancing only for the Dhruva portion, [not for the Sthāya-s]. But in Maṇṭha, the dance in the beginning must be with the Maṇṭha Tāla; then it is with Ekātālī that the Maṇṭha dance progresses.

1297-8

In Pratimaṇṭha, etc., the dancing is done with their respective Tāla-s. In these Sālaga songs, the dance must be based on quick tempo (*drutalaya*). In the case of Tāṇḍava dance, a slow tempo (*vilambitalaya*) is always recommended by scholars.

1299-1300

Where, having danced thus to the [seven] Rūpaka-s (compositions?) of the Sālagasūḍa type [beginning with Dhruva and] ending with Ekātālī, the dance is concluded, it is the Gaṇḍalividhi.

1300-1

### PERAṆIN

With the body smeared over with white [colouring] powder such as ash; with the head shaved leaving a [small] tuft of hair; having a number of shining anklet-

bells (Ghargharikā-s) tied to the shanks; with a good voice; one who is clever in the five elements; an expert in the art of timing and tempo, who dances so as to attract the mind of the audience—he is Peraṇin. 1301-3

The five elements are stated by [Śārṅgadeva], the favourite of Śiva, to be Gharghara, Viṣama, Bhāvāśraya, Kavicāraka, and Gīta. 1303-4

### *Gharghara*

Of these Gharghara is accepted to be the special training in the sounding of anklet bells. Paḍivāṭa, Apaḍapa, Siripāṭa, Alagapāṭa, Sirihira, and Khaluhula—these six kinds of Gharghara-s are accepted by the learned. 1304-6

#### 1. *Paḍivāṭa*

The up-and-down (Kuṭṭana) movement on the ground of both the heels one after the other, or of one heel, with the forepart of the feet held to the ground is Paḍivāṭa. 1306-7

#### 2. *Apaḍapa*

Striking the ground with the sole of the foot with an up-and-down movement is Apaḍapa. 1307

#### 3. *Siripāṭa*

Sliding the foot forward and backward repeatedly with the sole holding the ground is Siripāṭa. 1308

#### 4. *Alagapāṭa*

Shaking both the feet gently in the air one after the other is called Alagapāṭa. 1309

5. *Sirihira*

Keeping one foot in the Sama position, the other foot is pushed forward and its shank shaken. This is called Sirihira by the learned. Or, shaking the shanks keeping both the feet naturally on the ground is called Sirihira by the wise. 1310-1

6. *Khaluhula*

The up-and-down movement on the ground with the heel of the left foot while its forepart is kept touching the ground, and the circular movement to the left and right of the other foot, also kept with its forepart touching the ground, constitute the Khaluhula type of Gharghara according to experts on dancing. In the same way other kinds of beautiful Gharghara-s may also be thought out. All these types of Gharghara-s must be done in consonance with the Tāla.

1312-4

*Viṣama*

Viṣama is the name given to the Karaṇa-s with jumps (Utplutikaraṇa-s). 1314

*Bhāvāśraya*

Bhāvāśraya is accepted by the learned as the imitation of ludicrous things [for comic effect]. 1315

*Kavicāra*

Kavicāra is the description of the hero of high character. 1315

*Gīta*

Here Gīta refers to the Sālaga [songs] prescribed for the Gauṇḍali. 1316

## PERAṆĪ-PADDHATI

As in the case of the Gauṇḍali style, here also the members of the troupe on the stage should produce the deep sound of instruments 'Dhi, dhi, dhi, dhi'. Then, while three Pāda-s based on Rigoṇī and Uṭṭavaṇa [Prabandha-s] are played twice, mainly in slow tempo and in Niḥsāru Tāla, there should enter on the stage [an actor] with grotesque speech, dress, and ornaments, whose head is clean-shaven (Aṭṭaboḍaka). While he is dancing, producing only the Comic sentiment, the Peraṇin dancer enters. After entering he performs his dance after the conclusion (*upaśama*) of the Rigoṇī Prabandha. When all the musical instruments have stopped and while the cymbal-players (Tāladhara-s) together play expertly the Tāla named Gāruḡi, or the [Tāla named] Sarasvatikaṇṭhābharaṇa, and the instrumentalists (Vādaka-s) produce deep (Mandra) sounds on instruments like the Mardala, simultaneous with the Tāla sound, the Peraṇin dancer makes various Ghar-ghara-s like Apaḍapa. Then he must dance Utplutikaraṇa-s [Viṣama, mentioned above] to the Niḥsāru Tāla, accompanied by the Kavita [Prabandha] which is either Kūṭanibaddha or Varṇasarātman. Then along with Sālagasūḍa [compositions] he must demonstrate Rekḥā, Sthāpanā, attractive modes of sounding the

anklet-bells (Gharghara), Gīta dancing, difficult jumps (Viṣama) in consonance with Praharāṇa [Vādyaprabandha], and while the Ābhoga is being played, Kavicāra-s and Bhāvāśraya-s in Peraṇipaddhati.

1316-25

### ĀCĀRYA

The Ācārya is declared to be the person who knows the theory and practice of the triple symphony [dance, song, and instrumental music]. He must be eloquent of speech, handsome in appearance and dress, an expert in praising in a pleasing manner, humorous in assemblies, and an expert in playing musical instruments.

1325-6

### THE ACTOR (NĀṬA)

An actor is an expert in the four kinds of histrionic representation (Abhinaya), who knows the various types of plays like the Bhāṇa.

1327

### THE DANCER (NARTAKA)

A Nartaka is defined by experts as one who is [well] trained in the traditional dance.

1327

### VAITĀLIKA

The Vaitālika is considered by the wise to be one who knows well the various languages, who can amuse

the people of the assembly, and who is clever in criticizing others. 1328

### CĀRAṆA

The Cāraṇa is accepted to be one who knows the Kiṅkiṇīvādyā, who is surrounded by dancers in disguise [dancers of Vikāṭa],<sup>1</sup> who knows the vital points of all Rāga-s, and who is clever. 1329

### KOHLĀṬIKA

The Kohlāṭika is accepted to be one who can carry a heavy burden, who is well versed in Bhramarikā, etc., who is clever in rope-walking, who is an expert in dancing with a dagger, and who is clever in using weapons. 1330-1

### THE AUDIENCE

People of moderate views, attentive, eloquent speakers, experts in Nyāya, who know the right and wrong types of dancing, having the neck bent because of modesty, without pride, knowing well the Rasa-s and Bhāva-s, clever in the triple symphony, who criticize those who are not talking correctly, clever, free from jealousy, and with hearts overflowing with Rasa—these are [fit to be] the members of the assembly. 1331-3

<sup>1</sup> Cf. v. 32.

## THE PRESIDENT OF THE ASSEMBLY

Of an amorous disposition, generous, honourable, one who can discriminate [the qualities] of the body and of the dancers, wealthy, one who responds to even a modicum of merit, interested in entertainments, eloquent, free from jealousy, clever in making jokes, intelligent, of a dignified disposition, skilful in all the arts, rich in the detailed knowledge of all the Śāstra-s, desirous of fame, pleasing in speech, one who understands the thoughts of others, judicious, with a good memory, having an exceptional knowledge of the triple symphony [dance, song, and instrumental music], one who knows how to give gifts, one who has all the instruments [and other paraphernalia], one who knows the distinctions between the Deśī (provincial) and Mārga (classical), one who can distinguish deficiencies and excesses, learned, bold and impartial mediator, having command over his attendants, capable of aesthetic appreciation, full of Rasa, truthful, of noble birth, having a gracious face, steady in affection, grateful, an ocean of kindness, virtuous, fearful of sins, a friend of scholars—such a man is [fit to be] the president of the assembly. 1334-40

## THE SEATING OF THE ASSEMBLY

The brilliant [multi-coloured] dancing hall must be decorated with many flowers. It must be rich with various awnings and adorned with jewelled pillars.

There the President must occupy the beautiful lion-seat; to his left, the members of the harem and to his right, the chieftains; behind the chieftains should be the secretary of the treasury; <sup>1</sup> near them are scholars well versed in worldly and Vedic lore; poets of aesthetic taste, clever in the various styles, are also here. In the centre of the scholars should be seated honoured physicians and astrologers. On the right side is the assemblage of ministers; there itself are to be seated the chiefs of the army and others. Men and women of aesthetic taste should be around the members of the harem and in front of the king [the president of the assembly]. Behind the king are to be girls full of beauty and youthfulness, carrying beautiful chowries, making the minds of the people [audience] blissful through the jingling sound of their bangles. Sitting on the left side [of the king] in front are the composers of songs (Vāggeyakāraka-s), <sup>2</sup> story-tellers, bards, scholars, flatterers, clever in praising, and others clever in all the [different types of] Mātu-s (words of a song). Then the attendants [of the king] are to be seated round about them. The assembly should also have clever men holding canes. The bodyguards [of the king] should stand on all sides with weapons in their hands. Seating the audience thus, the king witnesses the dance and music.

1340-50

---

<sup>1</sup> The text might read *kośaśrīkaraṇādhipaḥ*.

<sup>2</sup> See *Prakīrṇakādhyāya*, v. 2.



## THE NINE SENTIMENTS (RASA-S)

THE wise desire this triple symphony [song, dance, and instrumental music] to be prominent in Rasa-s. So we now deal with Rasa-s through the method of generalization and noting of special features. 1351

Produced by the Determinants [or causes] (Vibhāva-s), Consequents [or results] (Anubhāva-s), and Transitory Moods (Vyabhicāribhāva-s) that reside in the actor, without having as basis oneself, another, a friend, an enemy, etc., and free from any distinction due to the distinctions of nature, place, and time; receptive only to the pure Sthāyibhāva (Permanent Mood) such as Love (Rati), Laughter (Hāsa), etc., and therefore, owing to the lack of any impediment, founded on complete peace; different from intuition, sensation, recollection, and other kinds of knowledge; dissimilar to the knowledge of Brahman [in] being based on various Permanent Moods like Rati; blissful, self-revealing knowledge called enjoyment; that is Rasa. Or Rasa is the Permanent Mood when it is revealed through enjoyment. 1352-6

Just as by various ingredients [of cooking] such as curd, and vegetables like turmeric, and articles such as sugar lumps having a sweet or other flavour, prepared

in a particular way, the Rasa called Śāḍava (the six-flavoured) is produced, so also by the employment of Determinants (Vibhāva), etc., Rasa (sentiment) is produced. 1356-8

There are nine accepted Rasa-s: the Erotic, (Śṛṅgāra), the Comic (Hāsyā), the Pathetic (Karuṇa), the Furious (Raudra), the Heroic (Vīra), the Fearful (Bhayānaka), the Odious (Bībhatsa), the Marvellous (Adbhuta), and the Tranquil (Śānta). 1358-9

Since the Tranquil sentiment can be effected only by Quietude (Śama), and since that cannot exist in the actor, there can be only eight Rasa-s in dramas—so say some people. That question cannot be raised, however, for the actor does not enjoy any Rasa. The audience tastes the Rasa; the actor is recognized as the vessel [out of which they taste it]. It is but reasonable that those clean-hearted people, who are concentrated of mind, enjoy the Tranquil sentiment produced by its own Determinants (Vibhāva-s). 1359-62

Love (Rati), Laughter (Hāsa), Sorrow (Śoka), Anger (Krodha), Energy (Utsāha), Fear (Bhaya), Disgust (Jugupsā), Astonishment (Vismaya), and Detachment (Nirveda)—these nine are the Permanent Moods. 1362-3

Some people have said that Disgust (Jugupsā) is the Permanent Mood in the case of the Tranquil sentiment. Some say it is Enthusiasm (Utsāha), others that it is Quietude (Śama), and yet others say that all these together [form the Permanent Mood of the Tranquil sentiment]. 1363-4

Having explained the Permanent Moods, when the time comes for [explaining] the Transitory Moods (Vyabhicāribhāva-s), the sage [Bharata] refers first of all to Detachment (Nirveda) even though it is inauspicious. Therefore he certainly thought that it [i.e., Nirveda] can be both a Permanent and a Transitory Mood. [The word] being in the middle, it can be taken either along with the previous [i.e., Sthāyi] or with the subsequent [i.e., Vyabhicāri] word through association. 1364-6

This [Nirveda] is a Permanent Mood if it is produced by the knowledge of the real truth about things of this world; and it is a Transitory Mood if it is produced by the loss of beloved persons or the advent of misfortune. 1366-7

Detachment (Nirveda), Fatigue (Glāni), Apprehension (Śaṅkā), Cruelty (Augrya), Depression (Dainya), Envy (Asūyā), Intoxication (Mada), Weariness (Śrama), Anxiety (Cintā), Contentment (Dhṛti), Recollection (Smṛti), Shame (Vrīḍā), Distraction (Moha), Indolence (Ālasya), Inconstancy (Cāpala), Joy (Harṣa), Indignation (Amarṣa), Despair (Viṣāda), Possession (Apasmāra), Stupor (Jaḍatā), Deliberation (Vitarka), Dreaming (Supta), Impatience (Autsukya), Dissimulation (Avahittha), Assurance (Mati), Awakening (Vibodha), Sickness (Vyādhi), Insanity (Unmāda), Arrogance (Garva), Agitation (Āvega), Death (Mṛti), Fright (Trāsa), and Sleep (Nidrā)—these are the thirty-three Transitory Moods (Vyabhicāribhāva-s). 1367-70

Stupefaction (Stambha), Perspiration (Sveda), Horripilation (Romāñca), Change of Voice (Svara-bheda), Trembling (Vepathu), Change of Colour (Vaivarṇya), Tears (Āśru), and Unconsciousness (Pralaya)—these are the eight Temperamental States (Sāttvikabhāva-s). [These are the natural outward signs of internal feelings]. 1370-1

The sources of the Comic (Hāsyā) sentiment are the improper manifestations of the Erotic sentiment, etc., (*rasābhāsa-s*) disfigured [changed] owing to the Determinants, etc., being placed in improper objects. 1371-2

The killing of one's relatives is the result of the Furious sentiment and it is the cause of the Pathetic sentiment—so say the learned; hence the Furious is the cause of the Pathetic. It is for the same reason that the Furious is called the cause of the Fearful sentiment. 1372-3

The development of the Pathetic sentiment is desirable from the Erotic sentiment of the Vipralambha type (Love in Separation). Wise men have said that the Heroic sentiment is the cause of the Fearful and the Marvellous sentiments. 1374

The laughter of the Vidūṣaka is the cause of mirth in the hero. When there is the Odious sentiment, the Fearful sentiment may be produced in the case of the timid, since there is similarity of Transitory Moods, caused by excitants such as blood, Distraction (Moha), etc. Thus these Rasa-s produce and are produced by one another. 1375-6

Dark, pale, grey, red, fair, black, blue, yellow, and white—these are respectively the colours of the nine Rasa-s. Viṣṇu, Manmatha, Yama, Rudra, Indra, Kāla, Mahākāla (Śiva), Brahman, and Buddha <sup>1</sup>—these are respectively the presiding deities of the [nine] Rasa-s. Others say that Kāma is the deity of the Erotic sentiment. 1377-9

Now I shall state the particular definitions of [the various] Rasa-s, etc., in their order. 1379

### *The Erotic Sentiment (Śṛṅgāra)*

By Determinants (Vibhāva-s) such as the lover and the beloved [and other Exciting Determinants or Uddīpanavibhāva-s] created by the poet in his work and brought before the eyes, as it were, by the actor by means of his performance, the Permanent Mood of Love (Rati) is made palatable to the spectators; by means of Consequents such as the Kānta glance exhibited by the actor, this [Permanent Mood] is made very intense; variety is created by the Transitory Moods such as Joy (Harṣa) and Anxiety (Cintā). Then it [the Permanent Mood] is called the Erotic sentiment by the learned Śārṅgin (Śārṅgadeva). 1380-2

Sambhoga and Vipralambha are stated to be its two stages; their definitions are respectively the union with and the separation from the beloved person. Love (Rati) is the Permanent Mood of pleasure with identity of feeling between a young couple of the highest type arising from perfect happiness, pervading

<sup>1</sup> The reading *Budha* seems to be a mistake; cf. *Nāṭya-śāstra*.

from the beginning till fruition, and filled with sexual love. 1383-5

The causes for the production of the Permanent and other [Transitory] Moods seen in the world, when presented by the great poets and made visible, as it were, by the actors, produce Rasa-s. They are Determinants (Vibhāva-s) since they determine [produce] the Rasa-s. 1385-6

A handsome man and a beautiful maiden [they are the Basic Determinants or Ālambanavibhāva-s], overcome by ardent love; characters like a female messenger, the woman's confidante and others; ornaments appropriate to each one, such as a crown, or a bracelet; the time, like the spring; things like sandal-paste; also music and the like; a place, such as a beautiful mansion or a garden [or a forest]; imitating the lover; looking at a swan-couple, paintings, etc.; water-sports—these, seen or heard, are well known as the Determinants in the Erotic Sentiment. 1387-90

The effects of the Moods [Permanent as well as Transitory] which are represented by clever actors are Anubhāva-s (Consequents), so called because they are the causes in the realization of their own causes [i.e., the Permanent or Transitory Moods].<sup>1</sup> 1390-1

They [the Consequents] lead towards, or make known, the Moods (Bhāva-s); hence they are called by the term 'Abhinaya' also, though they are only simulated by the actors. 1391-2

<sup>1</sup>The Moods are made to be felt (*anubhāvyate*) by these effects; hence they are called the Anubhāva-s or Consequents.

The [amorous] glance called Kānta,<sup>1</sup> the pupils of the eyes with the [Kaṭākṣa] movement<sup>2</sup> producing happiness, the eyebrows in the Catura pose,<sup>3</sup> a clear and sweet voice, the various Temperamental States represented by Horripilation, Change of Colour, etc.—these form the Consequents enriching the Erotic sentiment. Here [in this sentiment] all other than Indolence (Ālasya), Cruelty (Augrya), and Disgust (Jugupsā) become Transitory Moods; the three Transitory Moods beginning with Indolence should not be represented as existing in one's own Basic Determinant (Vibhāva).<sup>4</sup>

These are accepted to follow the course of Love in Union (Sambhoga). 1392-5

In Love in Separation (Vipralambha), the Kānta glance, etc., are not desired as Consequents. Apprehension (Śaṅkā), Envy (Asūyā), Weariness (Śrama), Impatience (Autsukya), Detachment (Nirveda), Fatigue (Glāni), Death (Mṛti), Insanity (Unmāda), Sickness (Vyādhi), Possession (Apasmāra), Awakening (Vibodha), Stupor (Jaḍatā), Depression (Dainya), Sleep (Nidrā), Dream and Drowsiness (Supta), and Anxiety (Cintā)—by the Consequents associated with these Transitory Moods, Love in Separation is represented.<sup>5</sup> 1396-8

<sup>1</sup> cf. v. 383.

<sup>2</sup> cf. v. 384.

<sup>3</sup> cf. v. 439.

<sup>4</sup> These three Transitory Moods should not be employed as existing in the same person in whom love is being depicted. Disgust is a Permanent Mood of the Odious sentiment, but then all Permanent Moods could be Transitory Moods in the case of Rasa-s other than their own.

<sup>5</sup> The reading of 1396 should be *śaṅkāśūyā*.

An extremely bad stage of Insanity (Unmāda), etc. [i.e., Possession, Sickness, etc.] should not be shown here. Death also should not be shown actually [on the stage], but the happy stage arising subsequently may be shown, to indicate it [death]. It can also be represented indirectly by words. 1398-1400

Now [it may be asked]: How is it that Love in Separation, which is full of sorrow, is accepted as a Rasa? This question does not arise, as in Love in Separation, we find the continuous suggestion of love. Even in Love in Union, the apprehension arising from [possible future] separation is certainly unavoidable. Thus each relieves and enriches the other and therefore the two can very easily be relished [and can be Rasa-s]. If it has the same [monotonous] form, like sugar, it will not be capable of being relished [continuously] for a long time. 1400-2

In Love in Union, Sleep (Nidrā) too [like Awakening] does not exist. [The question is asked:] For those who are longing for each other, there is Awakening. Why should it be described exclusively for Love in Separation? 1403

This argument is not acceptable. Awakening (Vibodha) is only the end of Sleep (Nidrā). How can it exist without the latter [Sleep]? 1404

If it is said that there is Sleep (Nidrā) even in Love in Union, due to the exertion of love dalliance, that is not so; for even though it may exist in Union, it should not be depicted since that is against the development of love. 1404-5



If it be said that since the Transitory Moods such as Anxiety (Cintā) are common to both the Pathetic sentiment and to Love in Separation, there is no difference between the two, that is not correct; the Pathetic sentiment has Sorrow as the Permanent Mood; while in Love in Separation, the Permanent Mood is Love. The distinction is based on the difference in the Permanent Moods. 1405-7

Now [it may be said]: Let there be the distinction in the case of the highest type of characters. But in the case of low characters, since there is no possibility of Exciting Determinants (Uddīpanavibhāva-s) such as garlands, etc., there can be no love; and then how can there be the Erotic sentiment of the Vipralambha type? Therefore, in that case, the Pathetic sentiment arising out of separation from the loved one is clear. In the case of low characters the sentiment of Love in Union is also impossible, since there are no [Exciting Determinants] garlands, etc. 1407-9

That is not correct, for Love in the case of a low character arises from the Basic Determinant (Ālambana-vibhāva), namely, the woman alone. Otherwise, even in separation how can there be love, since there are no [Excitants such as] garlands, etc.? 1409-10

Love in Separation, in which the Transitory Moods such as Anxiety are weak because of the hope [of re-union], is different from the Pathetic sentiment which is produced by hopelessness towards the beloved. 1410-1

The Kāma Śāstra has mentioned ten conditions in love. Longing (Abhilāṣa), then Anxiety (Cintā),

Recollection (Anusmṛti), Enumeration of [the beloved one's] Merits (Guṇakīrtana), Distress (Udvega), Lamentation (Vilāpa), Insanity (Unmāda), Sickness (Vyādhi), Stupor (Jadātā), and Death (Marāṇa)—these are the ten stages of love. 1411-3

The enjoyer [the herō] is the most important person; the woman [the heroine] who is the object of enjoyment is only a subordinate; therefore her attachment towards another man produces an interruption to the sentiment. On the other hand, the enjoyer [hero] being independent, there is no interruption [of the sentiment] if he has other beloved ones. 1413-4

The Erotic sentiment is of three types, differentiated by words, by costumes and make-up (Nepathya), and by the movements of the body. The dress and make-up of the actor indicative of [the hero] Rāma, etc., is called Nepathya. 1415

### *The Comic Sentiment (Hāsyā)*

Oddity in dress, ornaments, movements, and talk, imitation of the same [dress, etc.] of other people, impudence, greed for things shown by the eyes, irrelevant talk, touching the arm-pit, etc., of the person who is to laugh so as to tickle him—these and others are the Exciting Determinants. 1416-8

The Consequents are throbbing of the eyes, cheeks, and lips; opening wide, completely closing, or slightly contracting the eyes; holding the sides; perspiration; flushing of the face, etc. 1418-9

The Transitory Moods are Dream (Svapna), Dissimulation (Avahittha), Indolence (Ālasya), Sleep (Nidrā), Distraction (Tandrā), and so on. These and the rest are to be employed appropriately in the different types [of laughter] such as Smita (Gentle Smile).<sup>1</sup> The Permanent Mood is Laughter (Hāsa).

[When such are the conditions], the sentiment is called the Comic. 1419-21

This [Comic sentiment] is of two kinds: self-centred (Ātmastha) and centred in others (Parasamstha). The self-centred is that which is produced in the spectator on seeing the Determinants alone; that Comic sentiment which is produced on seeing another person laughing, and also [seeing] the Determinants, is described by the learned as centred in others. 1421-3

This [Comic sentiment] can relate to high, middle, and low characters; thus it is said to be of three kinds. Again it has six varieties in a different way: Smita (Gentle Smile) and Hasita (Gentle Laugh) are proclaimed by the wise as existing in the high character; Vihasita (Laughter) and Upahasita (Ridicule) in the middle character; and in the low character are described Apahasita (Vulgar Laughter) and Atihasita (Excessive Laughter). 1423-5

The Gentle Smile (Smita) is that laughter characterized by slightly expanded cheeks and gentle glances, without showing the teeth. 1426

The Gentle Laugh (Hasita) is indicated by blooming face, eyes, and cheeks, the teeth being slightly visible. 1427

<sup>1</sup> See below, vv. 1424 ff.

That which is accompanied by sound, sweet, proper to the occasion, with ruddy face, and with eyes and cheeks slightly contracted, is known as Laughter (Vihasita) by the wise. 1428

Where the shoulders and the head are bent, the eyes squinting, and the nose expanded, that laughter is Ridicule (Upahasita). 1429

Laughter arising on improper occasions, with tears in the eyes, with the shoulders and the head [violently] shaking, is stated to be Vulgar Laughter (Apahasita) by Śārngadeva. 1430

Laughter in which the ears are expanded, having a very loud sound, the eyes wet with running tears, and where the sides are held by the hands, is accepted to be Excessive Laughter (Atihasita). 1431

Among these three pairs, the first three [Smita, Vihasita, and Apahasita] are produced in oneself [self-centred]; others [Hasita, Upahasita, and Atihasita] are centred in others, since these are produced respectively by the former [Smita, etc.].<sup>1</sup> 1432

The Comic and Furious sentiments are of three types, distinguished by speech, by costumes and make-up, and by action. This is only an indication, since this distinction is possible in all [Rasa-s]. 1433

### *The Pathetic Sentiment (Karuna)*

Separation from dear ones and relatives, loss of wealth, death, captivity, misfortune arising from one's

<sup>1</sup> In v. 1432, the last line *hāsyō'tihasitam mataḥ* should read *pūrvasaṅkrāntijattvataḥ*.

own addictions [to gambling, liquor, etc.], death of one's son, etc., banishment from the country—these and others, either heard or seen [on the stage] are accepted as the Determinants. In the case of high characters these Determinants existing in other persons also [can be the Determinants for their own Karuṇa]; but in the case of middle and low characters these are Determinants only when they exist in themselves [and not when they occur in others]. 1434-6

Shedding tears, dryness of mouth, weeping, lameness, stupefaction, change of colour, drooping of the limbs, fainting, long-drawn respiration, exerting the body by falling and by striking it, and beating on the breast are the Consequents. 1436-8

Fatigue (Glāni), Weariness (Śrama), Fear (Bhaya), Distraction (Moha), Despair (Viṣāda), Detachment (Nirveda), Anxiety (Cintā), Impatience (Autsukya), Depression (Dīnatā), Stupor (Jaḍatā), Sickness (Vyādhi), Insanity (Unmāda), Indolence (Ālasya), Possession (Apasmāra), and Death (Mṛti), as well as Stupefaction (Stambha), Trembling (Kampa), Tears (Āśru), Change of Colour (Vaivarṇya), Change of Voice (Svarabheda) and others are the Transitory Moods. Grief (Śoka) is the Permanent Mood.

[When these conditions exist] there is the Pathetic sentiment.<sup>1</sup> 1438-40

<sup>1</sup>The Temperamental States (Sāttvikabhāva-s) such as Stupefaction, Perspiration, etc., are included among the Transitory Moods to show that these need not be permanently displayed by the actor in the Pathetic sentiment. Usually these are included in the Consequents, since they are the natural outward signs of internal feelings.

The rule here about the Consequents among the high and other characters is according to propriety.

1440

Weeping (Vilāpa) is crying accompanied by praise of the good qualities of the person lamented. Crying, while reproaching fate, oneself, and others is said to be Lamentation (Paridevana) by those who know the words.

1441-2

The Pathetic sentiment is of three kinds: produced by damage to virtue, produced by loss of wealth, and produced by the death of relatives. Of these, the first occurs only in high characters.

1442-3

Weeping is of three kinds: caused by happiness, grief, and jealousy respectively.

1443

That which is produced by happiness along with the recollection of grief, with expanded cheeks, with the hair on the body standing on end, and with tears in the corners of the eyes, is recognized as that produced by happiness (Ānandaja).

1444

[That depicted] by lamentation in a loud voice, the ends of the eyebrows turned [up], shedding tears profusely, and unsteady movements of the limbs, is accepted as [weeping] produced by grief (Ārtija).

1445

The weeping of women in which the head is shaken by the heaving of sighs, the lips and cheeks throb, and the glances and the eyebrows are crooked, is that produced by jealousy (Īrṣyākṛta).

1446

In the case of high and middle characters, tears are not shed for their own grief, because of their

courage; but they flow for the grief of others. In the case of women and low characters [they flow] for both [their own grief and that of others]. 1447

*The Furious Sentiment (Raudra)*

Wicked people like Rākṣasa-s and Daitya-s, destructive by nature; fighting, anger [on the part of others], false allegation, violation of another's wife, etc., abuse of the customs and learning of the place, caste, and family of another; threatening to kill and to violate the wife of another, insulting words, demolition of the house, etc., confiscating the kingdom, rivalry, and desire to kill are stated to be the Determinants.

1448-50

Knitting the eyebrows, red eyes, throbbing cheeks, biting the lips, pressing the hands against each other, striking another's body with the hand, etc., tearing [with the nail, etc.], pounding, breaking and crushing, taking up weapons, hurling [the weapon], fighting, and shedding of blood are the Consequents. 1451-3

Of these, such actions as beating should not be actually represented on the stage, but should be described by the actor after the event. 1453

Energy (Utsāha), Awakening (Vibodha), Indignation (Amarṣa), Agitation (Āvega), Cruelty (Augrya), Restlessness (Cāpala), Perspiration, Trembling, Horripilation, Choking Voice, etc., are the Transitory Moods. Anger (Krodha) is the Permanent Mood.

[When these conditions exist] there is the sentiment called the Furious. 1454-5

Perspiration may be actually represented or indicated by holding a fan, etc. Here [in the Furious sentiment], Energy (Utsāha) is only a Transitory Mood, and so there is no confusion with the Heroic sentiment [where Energy is the Permanent Mood]. 1455-6

Now if it is accepted that a Bhāva (Mood) becomes Permanent (Sthāyin) if it is invariably present, then how can this Energy (Utsāha) become a Permanent Mood in the Heroic sentiment? Such a doubt is out of place, for the Transitory Moods only flash momentarily, like lightning; so that the Permanent Moods can always be there. So it exists in the two Rasa-s in two different forms [i.e., as a fleeting Transitory Mood in the Furious sentiment and as the Permanent Mood in the Heroic sentiment]. 1456-8

Now it may be asked: Will not the Mood intended to be permanent, itself become momentary, since it is a natural Mood? True, but then it has become permanent in the form of mental impressions. The others [like Nirveda, etc.] do not become permanent as their impressions are expelled by the Permanent Mood.<sup>1</sup> They are restricted here, as their qualities manifest themselves and disappear [by turns]. 1458-60

Anger is of four types, being directed towards an elder, towards a lover, towards an enemy, and towards a servant. 1460

Anger towards elders is controlled by modesty and should have indistinct expression through action. 1461

<sup>1</sup> The reading in v. 1459 should be *na sthairyayoginah*.



The anger of a beautiful woman towards her lover, arising out of love, is indicated by throbbing lips, a few tears coming out of the corners of the eyes, and by the face having knitted eyebrows. 1461-2

Anger towards one's enemy is without any restraint, expressed by biting the lips, pressing the hands against each other, knitting the eyebrows fully, and looking at one's own arms. 1462-3

Anger towards one's servants is assumed for some purpose and is free from cruelty; it is characterized by unnatural looks, expanded eyes, and many rebukes. 1463-4

### *The Heroic Sentiment (Vīra)*

Certainty with regard to the true nature of action referring to the [aims of life such as] virtue, etc., [i.e., wealth, and pleasure] on the part of high characters, without astonishment, confusion, or sorrow; Naya (Diplomacy), Vinaya (Modesty), Kīrti (Fame), capacity for heroic action, Pratāpa (Might), influence, invincible military strength, power of counsel, having ministers who are wealthy and of good family—these and others shall be the Determinants indicated through words by the actor. 1464-7

Knowledge regarding the proper employment of the Upāya-s (Policies) like Negotiation (Sāma); Sthairya (Steadiness) and Dhairya (Courage); Śaurya (Valour) or generosity as is proper; speech, deep with emotion, etc.; and all the consequents of Pride

[Garva, one of the Transitory Moods] shall be the Consequents. 1467-9

Recollection (Smṛti), Cruelty (Augrya), Agitation (Āvega); Horripilation (Romāñca), Indignation (Amarṣa), Contentment (Dhṛti), Assurance (Mati)—moods like these are the Transitory Moods. Energy (Utsāha) is the Permanent Mood.

[When these conditions exist] the wise call the sentiment the Heroic. It exists only among men of the high type [and not among middle and low characters]. 1469-71

Diplomacy (Naya) is said to be the employment of the six means of foreign policy (Guṇa-s), after knowing them well. The six Guṇa-s described in the science of politics (Nītiśāstra) are: Alliance (Sandhi), War (Vigraha), March (Yāna), Halt (Āsana), Stratagem [to divide the enemy] (Dvaidhībhāva), and Recourse [to the protection of a mightier king] (Saṁśraya). Modesty (Vinaya) is described by the favourite of Śiva [Śārṅgadeva] to be the control of the senses. Might (Pratāpa) is the fame produced by valour, which causes distress to enemies. Fame (Kīrti) is the glory which produces happiness to friends and indifferent people. The Policies (Upāya-s) are four: Negotiation (Sāma), Bribery (Dāna), Effecting a Division (Bheda), and Attack (Daṇḍa). Steadiness (Sthairya) is to have an unperturbed mind. Courage (Dhairya) is to be profound. Valour (Śaurya) is the conduct of war without any fear. 1471-5

In a proper war, the sentiment is the Heroic, whereas in an improper war it is the Furious. 1476

The Heroic sentiment is of three kinds: Heroism in Charity (Dānavīra), Heroism in Virtue (Dharma-vīra), and Heroism in War (Yuddhavīra). Here, Charity, etc., are the Determinants as far as the villain is concerned, while in the hero they are the Consequents. That is the view of the learned. 1476-7

*The Fearful Sentiment (Bhayānaka)*

The sight of demons (Rākṣasa-s), ghosts (Piśāca-s), bears etc., of frightening form, and hearing their unnatural noises in a lonely house or at the entrance of a forest; panic and anxiety existing in others; hearing about and contemplating the death or captivity of one's relatives—these and others are the Determinants.

1478-80

Intermittent stupefaction and trembling of the eyes, hands, and feet; much horripilation; dry lips and palate; palpitation of the heart; loss of colour in the face; change of voice; drooping of the limbs; unsteadiness of the eyes due to restlessness—these are the Consequents.

1480-2

Then the eight [Temperamental States], Stupefaction (Stambha), etc., Depression (Dainya), Agitation (Āvega), Inconstancy (Cāpala), Apprehension (Śāṅkā), Distraction (Moha), Fright (Trāsa), Possession (Apsamāra), and Death (Marāṇa) are the Transitory Moods. Fear (Bhaya) is the Permanent Mood.

[When these conditions exist] there is the sentiment called the Fearful.

1482-3

Fear is said to be of two kinds: real and assumed. Women and men of low type have real fear; men of the middle type and the high type are said to have assumed fear. Those two [types] of men are naturally free from fear; they may assume fear towards their masters and elders to show their modesty. Low characters have to show that [i.e., fear] by means of mild actions in order to indicate their own nature. 1484-6

The Fearful sentiment is, again, of three kinds: that which is produced by causes in oneself (Svahetūttha), that which is assumed (Kṛtrima), and that which is for frightening others (Vitrāsitaka). Of these the first (Svahetūttha) is what its name indicates; the assumed one is unreal and is shown by high characters towards their elders, etc.; and Vitrāsitaka is intended for frightening children, etc. 1487-8

### *The Odious Sentiment (Bibhatsa)*

An object which is extremely unpleasant either by its innate nature or by some defect in one's constitution; that which is forbidden; that which is unpalatable due to satiety; the filthy; what produces constant repulsion as it gives unwanted results—such are the Determinants. 1489-90

And the Consequents are: trembling, shaking the limbs [in disgust]; contracting the nose, lips, and jaws; spitting; unsteady steps; and covering the nose and the eyes. 1490-1

The Transitory Moods are Delusion (Moha), Agitation (Āvega), Possession (Apasmāra), Death

(Mṛtyu), and Sickness (Vyādhi). Disgust (Jugupsā) is the Permanent Mood.

[When these conditions exist] the sentiment is called the Odious. 1492

The Odious sentiment is of three kinds: Pure (Śuddha), Impure (Aśuddha), and Extremely Pure (Atyantaśuddha). The first two arise respectively from pure and impure Determinants like blood and excretion. The extremely pure type results from the virtue of renunciation and has the whole of worldly existence as its object [of renunciation]. 1493-4

### *The Marvellous Sentiment (Adbhuta)*

Attainment of desired objects which are rare, sight of heavenly beings and aerial vehicles, seeing illusory (Māyā) and magical (Indrajāla) acts, and also palaces, gardens, etc., of extraordinary excellence, seeing a person excelling in arts or crafts—these are the Determinants. 1494-6

The Consequents are opening wide the eyes, gazing with unwinking eyes, horripilation, uttering words of praise, saying 'Well done' in approbation, Ullukasana, crying 'Ha! Ha!' in joy, choking voice, perspiration, shivering indicating joy, and the Consequents depending on Sparśagraha.<sup>1</sup> 1496-8

The Transitory Moods are Stupefaction (Stambha), Perspiration (Sveda), Horripilation (Romāñca), Unconsciousness (Pralaya), Choking Voice (Gadgada), Agitation (Āvega), Hurry (Sambhrama), and Inactivity

<sup>1</sup> See below v. 1502.

(Jāḍya). Astonishment (Vismaya) is the Permanent Mood.

[When these conditions exist] the sentiment is called the Marvellous by [Śārṅgadeva], the son of Soḍhala. 1498-1500

Illusorily produced changes in form, etc., are called Māyā; showing impossible things with the help of various herbs, sleight of hand, or by secret charms is called Indrajāla. Ullukasana is accepted here as the shaking of the body due to joy. The new Consequents based on Sparśagraha are slightly curved eyes, touching the shoulders and cheeks, and knitted eyebrows. 1500-3

The Marvellous sentiment is said to be of two kinds: joyous and divine. The former is produced by the realization of one's desires, and the latter is produced by celestial things. 1503-4

### *The Tranquil Sentiment (Śānta)*

Dread of mundane existence, finding defects in worldly pleasures, contact with ascetics, instructions of sages on tranquillity, self-control and forbearance, assemblages of people with spiritual aims, ascetics, penance-groves, plenty of water gurgling in rivulets, places of pilgrimage and people going to such places, rivers of sacred water and river banks spotted with wild rice plants, Śaiva or Vaiṣṇava temples, lonely forests, devotees intoxicated with devotion towards Śiva or Viṣṇu, greatness of devotion towards Viṣṇu, and others are accepted as the Determinants. 1504-8

Calm mental activity,<sup>1</sup> the eyes shedding tears of joy, the body coated with bristling hair [i.e., horripilation], thinking about the meaning of the science of Release [i.e., philosophy], instruction in the knowledge of Brahman [Ultimate Truth], talk about Reality, the eyes directed towards the tip of the nose, showing the Jñānamudrā [gesture indicating wisdom]—these and others are the Consequents. 1508-10

The following are the Transitory Moods: Insanity (Unmāda) produced by drinking the essence of supreme bliss, Joy (Harṣa), Contentment (Dhṛti), and complete Awakening (Vibodha), Recollection (Smṛti), and Assurance (Mati). Detachment (Nirveda) arising from the realization of Truth is the Permanent Mood.

[When these conditions exist] there is the Tranquil sentiment. 1510-2

Free from distinctions such as Love (Rati), etc., and free of all disturbances caused by worldly objects, shining in the form of intense supreme bliss—that is the Tranquil sentiment. 1512-3

Or the Permanent Mood may be Quictude (Śama), which is natural aversion towards worldly pleasures. In order that it may be represented on the stage, the Transitory Moods are [to be shown] frequently in the middle of this. 1513-4

All those gestures discussed previously as representing the natural state are applicable to the Tranquil sentiment, for Śānta is the natural state of the self. Śānta is said to be the natural state of the self, since by

<sup>1</sup> The reading should be *mandasṇandam*.

abandoning attachment towards worldly pleasures, it leads to the natural state of bliss. 1514-6

Some people consider as Rasa-s the [following] three: Devotion (Bhakti), Affection (Sneha), and Passion (Laulya). For these, they consider Faith (Śraddhā), Tenderness (Ārdratā), and Desire (Abhilāṣa) as the Permanent Moods. This is not correct, for Devotion and Affection are only a form of Love (Rati) between men [i.e., free of sex]. These two are only Transitory Moods; they [Devotion and Affection] become Permanent Moods only when they are between man and woman, [in which case it is only sexual Love, the Permanent Mood of the Erotic sentiment]. Passion (Laulya) is only desire towards an improper object, which becomes the cause of the Comic sentiment. Hence it has been decided by the sage [Bharata] that the Rasa-s are only nine. 1516-9

Love (Rati) and others are the Permanent Moods when they are produced by a large number of Determinants; when produced by a few of the Determinants, the same [Love, etc.], become Transitory Moods and appear in other sentiments also appropriately. For example, Laughter is found in the Erotic sentiment [as a Transitory Mood] and Love in the Tranquil sentiment; and Anger in the Heroic sentiment, Fear in the Pathetic sentiment, and Disgust in the Fearful sentiment. Energy and Astonishment are Transitory Moods in all the sentiments. Quietude (Śama), exists in all the sentiments; but since it is permanent, it cannot be a Transitory Mood. 1519-22



## THE TRANSITORY MOODS (VYABHICĀRIBHĀVA-S)

Now the definitions of the Transitory Moods such as Detachment [are given]:

### *Detachment* (Nirveda)

Abusive words, scolding, illness, anger, beating, poverty, separation from beloved persons, and the sight of another's prosperity are the Determinants as far as low characters are concerned. Being humiliated, as well as the realization of Ultimate Truth, is [the Determinant] as far as high characters are concerned. The Consequents are weeping, deep respiration, down-cast face, deliberation, etc. That Mood is described by the learned as Detachment (Nirveda). 1523-6

### *Weakness* (Glāni)

Sickness, vomiting, purgation, fasting, austerities, penance, mental worry, excessive drinking, too much exercise, sexual indulgence, sleeplessness, travelling a long distance, hunger, thirst, and so on are the Determinants. Drooping lips, eyes, and cheeks, raising and putting down the feet slowly, thinness of the body, change of colour [paleness], languidity of the body, trembling, lack of energy, etc., are the Consequents. That Mood is called Weakness. 1526-9

### *Apprehension* (Śaṅkā)

The arrest of people for crimes such as theft, and giving offence to the king are the Determinants [for

Apprehension] as far as other collaborators are concerned. Attempting not to be seen by others<sup>1</sup>; looking on either side frequently; dryness of the throat, lips, and mouth; licking all round; trembling; change of facial colour; a thick and rolling tongue; an expectant look—when a multitude of these Consequents exists, there is Apprehension in the low type of characters and also in the middle and high types of men. This [i.e., Apprehension] exists in high types of women and is expressed by mild gestures. Because of their timidity, it can produce fear. Apprehension produced by causing displeasure to the beloved is said by Śārṅgin [the author] to exist in the Erotic sentiment; and that produced from theft and giving offence to the king, etc., in the Fearful sentiment. 1530-4

Apprehension is said to be of two kinds: that existing in others and that arising in oneself. Guilty feeling existing in timid persons, which is apprehended on seeing their confused looks, is that arising from others. That arising from oneself is the apprehension about other people knowing one's own fear [taking the form]: 'Others may know my crime'. In [expressing] sentiment, Apprehension is found together with Dissimulation (Avahittha). 1535-7

### *Cruelty (Augrya)*

Offence towards the king, proclamation of faults that do not exist, and arresting a robber are the Determinants. Imprisoning, killing, beating, and

<sup>1</sup> In 1531, the correct reading seems to be *yatnaḥ* for *yatra*.

threatening are the Consequents. Then there is Cruelty (Augrya), which is essentially lack of pity. 1538-9

*Depression* (Dainya)

From the Determinants, Anxiety, Impatience, Mental Worry, and Misfortune, and Consequents [such as] turning round the head, dullness of body, and rejecting the decorations of the body, should the Mood of Depression be discerned. 1539-40

*Envy* (Asūyā)

Where various offences, hatred, and the sight of other people's prosperity, wealth, good luck, intelligence, education, etc., are the Determinants; and where the Consequents are finding faults [in others] out of indignation, hiding [their] good qualities, decrying their virtues as vices, not paying any attention, downcast face, knitting the eyebrows in contempt, etc., there is said to be Envy. 1541-3

*Intoxication* (Mada)

Drinking liquor is the Determinant and the Consequents are the five [things]: sleeping, laughing, singing, weeping, and abusive words. In the case of high characters, it is sleep; in the case of the middle type of character, laughter and singing take place; and in the low type of character there is weeping and abusive words. Where these exist, there is Intoxication. And it is of three kinds: light, medium, and base (Tarūṇa, Madhya, and Adhama). Tarūṇa means 'a little' [i.e., only slightly intoxicated]; and Adhama is excessive

and is associated with low characters. Taruṇa is ordained for all [types of characters]; Madhyama is only for the middle and low characters; and the Adhama type of intoxication is only for the low type of characters. 1543-7

By means of indistinct and incoherent sentences, by much horripilation on the body, and by light and stumbling steps should the light type of Intoxication be represented. Drooping, agitated, or outstretched arms, unsteady and rolling eyes, and irregular gait are the Consequents in the medium type of Intoxication. Incapacity to walk, loss of memory, hiccoughs, vomiting, flow of phlegmatic saliva [from the mouth], a thick tongue, and spitting are the Consequents in the excessive type of Intoxication. 1547-50

If the drinking is done on the stage, the growth of Intoxication should be represented; if the entry on the stage is after drinking, the intelligent [actor] should use simultaneously such means as joy, grief, and fear for [indicating] decreasing Intoxication. 1550-1

### *Weariness* (Śrama)

By means of Determinants such as long travel, doing exercises, etc.; and by Consequents such as gentle massaging of the body, contraction of the mouth, cracking of the limbs, deep breathing, yawning, and slow gait, Weariness is [depicted]. 1552-3

### *Anxiety* (Cintā)

When the Determinants are poverty, loss of wealth, and theft of a favourite object; and when the

Consequents are deep respiration, downcast face, grief, recollection, meditation, emaciation, neglect [non-decoration] of the body, and discontent, then there is what is known as Anxiety. Deliberation (Vitarka) arises either before or after Anxiety. 1553-5

### *Contentment* (Dhṛti)

Discretion, wealth of spiritual knowledge, devotion to one's superiors, and good conduct [i.e., disciplined life] as the basis and instrumental cause; obtaining more than what is expected of desired objects [getting an excessive amount of wealth, etc.] as the basis; and the enjoyment of sports as an instrumental cause—these are accepted as the Determinants. The Consequents are two: not worrying about the enjoyment of objects gained or about objects unobtained or passed by, when they are spent or lost; and absence of grief. That [Transitory Mood] the wise call Contentment. 1556-9

### *Recollection* (Smṛti)

Sleeplessness of a sort that there is rest only towards the last hours of the night, meditation, and frequent study of the Veda-s and the different systems of philosophy are the Determinants; and the Consequents are nodding or raising the head, looking at dissimilar things, and lowering the eyebrows. That [Transitory Mood] is called Recollection. It is the remembering of objects which have been long forgotten and which produces happiness or misery. 1559-62

*Shame (Vriḍā)*

Transgressing the [words of] superiors, humiliation, repentance over what has been given up, non-fulfilment of vows<sup>1</sup>—produced by these Determinants, the Mood of Shame is indicated by such [Consequents] as downcast face, talking in secrecy, thinking [thoughtfulness], touching one's garment and ring, cutting [biting, etc.] the nails frequently, and drawing [lines] on the ground. Shame is seen when one becomes ashamed, repentant, and pure, after having done something improper. 1562-5

*Distraction (Moha)*

Injury to the body, separation from dear ones, etc., owing to distress caused by fate; beating on vital parts; terrible fear in an unexpected place due to robbers, etc.; recollection of enmity, etc., on the part of a person who finds no remedy [for it]—where these Determinants exist; and where falling down, shaking the body, restlessness of mind, inactivity of the senses, and others are the Consequents, that [Mood] is called Distraction by the wise. On seeing the cause of fear and not finding any remedy for it, the mental attitude which is undecided about what is to be done, is said to be Distraction. 1565-9

*Indolence (Ālasya)*

When satiety, one's own nature, pregnancy, sickness, fatigue, etc., are the Determinants; and sleep,

<sup>1</sup>The correct reading seems to be *pratijñātānirvāhaṇa*. See *Nāṭya-sāstra*.

laziness, sitting, dislike of all activity except taking food are the Consequents, the [Transitory Mood] is called Indolence. 1569-70

### *Inconstancy* (Cāpala)

Where the Determinants are indignation, opposition, jealousy, attachment, hatred, and rivalry; and where the Consequents are rebuking, harsh words, striking, beating, killing, and imprisonment, the [Mood] is taken to be Inconstancy. It is action without any forethought. 1571-2

### *Joy* (Harṣa)

The favour of gods, husbands, elders, or one's master; union with the beloved; attainment of the desired object, attainment of unattainable desired objects and wealth; birth of a son, etc.—where these are the Determinants; and where brightness of eyes and face, speaking pleasant words, horripilation, tears, perspiration, etc., are the Consequents, that [Mood] should be called Joy. 1573-5

### *Indignation* (Amarṣa)

Indignation arises on being insulted in an assembly by men who have superior education, wealth, strength, and prosperity; it is of the nature of a desire for vengeance. It exists only in men of energy. Its Consequents are perspiration, a downcast face, shaking the head, having a mind not directed on anything, looking for means [for vengeance], and mental energy. 1575-7

*Despair* (Viṣāda)

Non-attainment, owing to misfortune, of the result even when the means are available, giving offence to the king, and getting arrested at the time of theft, etc., are the Determinants; and looking for friends, thinking about means, and perplexity of mind are the Consequents, based on energy, in the case of high and middle characters. In the case of low characters, the Consequents are running, cogitation, a dry mouth, looking, sleep, sighing, and licking the corner of the mouth. Where these exist that Mood is called Despair by those who know the Moods. 1578-81

*Possession* (Apasmāra)

Possession by gods, Nāga-s, Yakṣa-s, Piśāca-s, Brahmarākṣasa-s, Bhūta-s, etc., and by malignant planets; memory of these; staying long in an impure place; resorting to a lonely house; derangement of the Dhātu-s [the three humours, wind or *vāta*, bile or *pitta*, and phlegm or *kapha*—by means of these and the like Determinants; and by the Consequents, throbbing, trembling, deep breathing, running and falling down on the ground, licking [the lips] with the tongue, perspiration, stupefaction, foaming mouth, loss of consciousness, etc., Possession is indicated.

1581-4

*Stupor* (Jadātā)

Stupor is the lack of discrimination of things seen or heard. Its Determinants are seeing or hearing a



desired or an undesired thing and sickness. Its Consequents are a contradicting reply, speaking indistinctly, incapacity to distinguish between welcome and unwelcome things, an unwinking stare, etc. This [Stupor] can come either before or after Distraction (Moha). That is the view of scholars. 1585-7

### *Deliberation* (Vitarka)

Where perplexity, doubt or reflection when two opposing views are given, and arguments for and against [these views] are the Determinants; and where the Consequents are shaking the head, knitting the eyebrows, and the Catura pose of the hand, that [Mood] is called Deliberation. The Permanent Mood which has Deliberation [as a Transitory Mood] is also [usually] associated with Dissimulation (Avahittha).

1587-9

### *Dreaming* (Supta)

Dreaming has sleep as its Determinant; and it is the state of dreaming. Its Consequents are an immobile body, closed eyes, prattling in sleep, [deep] respiration, and complete retirement of all the senses.

1590-1

### *Impatience* (Autsukya)

Impatience is described by those learned in the Moods as produced by [the Determinant] separation from dear ones. It is kindled by memory of those beloved persons, and is indicated by [the Consequents] sleep, drowsiness, dullness of the body, and thinking.

1591-2

*Dissimulation* (Avahittha)

The state of concealing indications of feeling is called Dissimulation. Its Determinants are fear, shame, audacity, crookedness, respect, and indifference through pride; and its Consequents are break in the talk about the beloved person, etc., feigned boldness, giving a wrong impression through speech, and similarly through looks, etc. 1593-5

*Assurance* (Mati)

Assurance is an extraordinary flash of insight. It is to be produced by [the Determinants] knowledge arising from the consideration of the pros and cons of things, deliberations on the Śāstra-s, and suppositions and disputations (Ūhāpoha) of various kinds. It is to be indicated by [the Consequents] Saṁdaṁśa, Catura and other hand poses, raising the eyebrows, and instructing pupils on the meanings of various Śāstra-s. Ūhāpoha means reasoning in a positive and negative way. 1595-8

*Awakening* (Vibodha)

The end of a dream, break of sleep, digestion of food, sound, touch, etc., in dream, or remembered in the waking stage—by these Determinants is [Awakening] produced. Yawning, rubbing the eyes, getting up from bed, cracking the fingers, bending the limbs, stretching the arms, deep breathing—by these Consequents should Awakening be indicated. Or it is

complete awakening, and its Determinants and Consequents are to be noted from the world itself. 1598-1601

### *Sickness* (Vyādhī)

Diseases such as fever are caused by the disorder of any one or any two or all three of [the humours of the body] *vāta*, *pitta*, and *kapha*. By sickness, here, is meant the Mood arising from these. Fever is to be represented by Stupefaction, drooping limbs, bent body, narrowing down the mouth, lamentation, shivering, and loud groaning. Fever is produced by passion also. It is of two kinds: produced by cold and by heat. Fever with the feeling of cold should be represented by shaking of the jaws, shivering of the whole body, dryness of mouth, lamentation, horripilation, narrowing of the mouth, etc. Fever with the feeling of heat [is to be represented] by the desire to drink water, throwing out the hands, feet, and body out of a desire to lie down on the ground, and lamentations with the desire to have cool unguents.

1601-5

### *Insanity* (Unmāda)

In the case of high characters, Insanity arises during Love in Separation because of separation from the beloved; in the case of low characters, because of loss of wealth; in the case of all, because of a fall or injury. It should be represented by [Consequents] such as laughing without reason; weeping and reciting in the same way [i.e., without reason]; dancing; singing; lying on the bed; getting up and running;

prattling incoherently; throwing up dust and ashes; decorating oneself with skulls, bark-garment, and the remains of flower-offerings to a deity (*nirmālya*). Even though Insanity is included in Sickness, it is stated separately. In Love in Separation, etc., this [Mood] does certainly produce great variety. In the same way Possession also [produces variety] in the Odious and Terrible sentiments. 1607-11

### *Arrogance (Garva)*

In the low type of characters, Arrogance arises again and again mainly owing to noble birth, good looks, strength, prosperity, learning, wealth, and youth. In the case of high characters, it comes only [in a flash] like lightning. In the case of women, it comes in different ways. The expert in Karaṇa-s says that this [Arrogance] should be represented by looking with raised neck, contempt, jealousy, not giving a reply, not talking, anger, roughness, Vibhrama (restlessness), movement of the limbs, movement of the eyes, and by insulting and transgressing elders. 1612-5

Vibhrama (restlessness) arises in women through joy, love, intoxication and arrogance, and produces a change in speech, in the movement of the limbs, in the Temperamental States, in costumes and dress, and in action. 1615-6

### *Agitation (Āvega)*

In the case of timid persons, Agitation arises soon after grief is produced; the bold [i.e., high] type of persons show it with courage even if it be

strong. For each Determinant, it has distinct and various Consequents. It is of eight kinds depending on the difference in the forms of the Determinants which cause it. Natural calamity, storm, rain, outbreak of fire, running amok of elephants, hearing of good or bad news, and calamity arising from enemies are the causes. The agitation due to natural calamity is produced by lightning, fall of meteors, thunderstorm, earthquake, eclipse of the sun or the moon, or by the sight of a comet. Its Consequents are change of colour and languidity of limbs; the Consequents of Despair and Astonishment are also acceptable here. [In the Agitation] due to storm, the Consequents are covering with a cloth, rubbing the eyes, and quick movement. In that due to rain, [the Consequents are] pressing the whole body, taking shelter in some house, etc., or quick running. In that due to fire, [the Consequents are] shaking of the limbs, the eyes getting filled with smoke, and the quick movements in Atikrāntā and Apakrāntā Cāri-s. That which is produced by the running amok of elephants has [as its Consequents] running, retreating quickly, fear, and trembling. In the Agitation due to the hearing of good news, [the Consequents are] astonishment, looking back, gifts of cloth and ornaments, getting up and embracing. In that due to the hearing of bad news, [the Consequents are] tears and horripilation while narrating the news, lamentation, falling on the ground, moving and rolling about, running about,<sup>1</sup> etc. In that arising from

<sup>1</sup> The reading should be *paridhāvana*.

calamity caused by enemies, the Consequents are sudden retreat, taking up weapons, shield and armour, mounting elephants or horses, and deliberation. These are the separate Consequents in Agitation which is of the nature of excitement. 1616-28

### *Death (Maraṇa)*

Death is said to be of two kinds: produced by illness and produced by accidental injury. Death produced by illness is caused by the maladjustment of the humours (Doṣa-s), or by boils, fever, etc. Here, the defective humours, wind (*vāta*), bile (*pitta*), and phlegm (*kapha*) are accepted as the Doṣa-s. Death through accidental injury is caused by weapons, snakes,<sup>1</sup> poison, water, wild animals, horses, elephants, fire, fall from a height, etc. 1629-31

Death through illness is indicated by Consequents such as limbs stretched out motionless, closing the eyes, hiccoughs, taking the final breath (*ūrdhvaśvāsa*), vomiting, being attended by people, and speaking in indistinct syllables. In death caused by weapons, suddenly falling on the ground, trembling, throbbing, etc., should be used [as Consequents]. In that caused by snake-bite and drinking poison, there are the following eight Consequents in order, [indicating] the spreading of the poison: blackness [of the body], trembling, burning sensation, hiccoughs, foam [from the mouth], twisting of the shoulders, stiffness, and death. The Consequents in the case of death through other kinds

<sup>1</sup> The reading should be *śastrāhi*.

of accidental injury are the same as in the case of death caused by weapons. 1631-5

Here by 'Death' is meant the activity of the mind just before death, when death is inevitable, the illness, etc., being incurable. 1636

### *Fright (Trāsa)*

Fright is said to be a sudden surprise producing tremors of the body. It is caused by portents [like a meteor or earthquake], hearing a terrible noise, and seeing frightful sights. Its Consequents are described as shrinking of the body, trembling, stupefaction, choked voice, horripilation, looseness of limbs, closing the eyes, and fainting. Fear produced by deliberation on the past and the future is different from Fright.

1637-9

### *Sleep (Nidrā)*

Sleep is the first recession of the sense-organs from their respective objects. Overeating, natural habit, deliberation, laziness, intoxication, fatigue, and the indeterminable nature [of a text, etc.,] felt through the difficulty in explanation, etc., are the Determinants for Sleep. Its Consequents are yawning, heaviness of the face, tossing about of the body, rolling the eyes, cracking [the limbs of] the body, deep breathing, relaxed body, and closed eyes. 1640-2

I have stated these thirty-three since they make the sentiment Dominant by producing variety. There are others in thousands. According to some, Desire (Abhilāṣa) is included in Love (Rati), Pride (Dambha)

in Dissimulation (Avahittha), Hunger and Thirst in Fatigue (Glāni), and Tranquillity (Udvega) in Detachment (Nirveda). Others can be guessed at similarly. 1643-5

## THE TEMPERAMENTAL STATES (SĀTTVIKABHĀVA-S)

When, by these [Permanent] Moods like Love explained before, consciousness is modified, that [modified consciousness] identifies itself with the soul (*prāṇa*); and that soul makes the body its own; then the modifications in the body like Stupefaction are produced. 1645-6

In this way, produced by the Determinants connected with Love, etc., which are being relished, and indicated by Consequents such as Stupefaction occurring in the body, these internal states shine forth in the soul on which consciousness has been superimposed. They are called Sāttvikabhāva-s, since they shine forth in Sattva, or the vital breath. 1647-8

Or, Sattva can be the [Sattva] Guṇa explained in Sāṃkhya philosophy; or it means 'goodness'. Here goodness is accepted to be purity of body and soul. Here Sāttvikabhāva-s are accepted by good people to be Moods (Bhāva-s) existing in Sattva. 1649-50

The vital breath (*prāṇa*) depends on [each of] the other four elements, beginning with earth, as the prominent factor. Sometimes the vital breath itself becomes the prominent element and moves in the



body. When it depends on the earth [element], then the state of Stupefaction (Stambha) is indicated. From the vital breath based on the water [element] come Tears (Aśru); and from that based on the fire [element] come Change of Colour (Vaivarnya) and Perspiration (Sveda). From that based on Ether (Ākāśa) is produced Unconsciousness (Pralaya). When independent, it [the vital breath] indicates Horripilation (Romāñca), Trembling (Vepathu), and Change of Voice (Svarabheda) respectively, depending on whether it [the vital breath] is weak, medium, or strong. 1650-3

The external Stupefaction, etc., in the body are easily produced in the case of [ordinary] people who consider the body to be the same as the soul; but they are not easily produced in the case of the great who have no such misconception. 1654

### *Stupefaction* (Stambha)

Stupefaction arises out of joy, attachment, fear, sorrow, grief, wonder, anger, and perplexity. Its Consequents are stiffness, vacant look, lifeless and stupefied body, motionlessness, and absence of tremor. 1655-6

### *Perspiration* (Sveda)

When mental distress, illness, joy, bashfulness, anger, fear, fatigue, pain, beating, heat, swoon, and exercise are the Determinants; and when holding a fan, perspiration, and the Arāla hand pose used for wiping the forehead are the Consequents, the [Temperamental State] is called Perspiration by the learned. 1656-8

*Horripilation* (Romāñca)

Embracing, amorous scratching (Ācchuritaka), cold, joy, fear, and anger produce Horripilation. It is to be represented by touching the body, shaking the body frequently (Ullukasana), and the body with hair standing on end. 1658-9

*Change of Voice* (Svarabheda)

Severe illness, old age, anger, fear, joy, intoxication, etc., are the Determinants. Visvara, Bhinna and Gadgada are Consequents. This Mood is called 'Change of Voice'. Visvara means produced at the wrong place of articulation. Bhinna means not continuous. Gadgada is of irregular pitch [varying from] medium or *tānu*, high or *ucca*, and low or *nīca*. 1660-2

*Trembling* (Vepathu)

Embracing, amorous scratching (Ācchuritaka), joy, anger, fear, old age, cold, and illness are the Determinants; and shivering, throbbing, and shaking are the Consequents. Then the [Temperamental State] is called Trembling (Vepathu). Shivering (Vepana), etc., are the different types of trembling in the increasing order of prominence. 1662-4

*Change of Colour* (Vaivarṇya)

Change of Colour occurs through illness, swoon, fear, anger, cold, grief, and fatigue. It is to be represented by effecting a change of colour in the face by pressing the blood-vessels or by vermilion (*sindūra*), etc. 1664-5

*Tears (Aśru)*

As a result of joy, anger, collyrium [applied in the eye], smoke, fear, grief, yawning, staring with unwinking eyes, cold, and illness, the state of Tears comes; and it must be indicated by shedding tears and by wiping the eyes. 1666-7

*Unconsciousness (Pralaya)*

Fainting is caused by intoxication, swoon, injury, sleep, loss of consciousness, fatigue, etc., and is to be represented by falling on the ground. 1667-8

Thus three kinds of Moods [or States, Bhāva-s] are given: the Permanent Mood, the Transitory Mood, and the Temperamental State. All the eight Temperamental States can appear in any one of the sentiments. In a drama, one sentiment must always be made the Permanent one among the sentiments; other Rasa-s [the Bhāva-s are meant here] are only Transitory States, since they follow the main sentiment. Among them, conflicting sentiments must be delineated as existing in different persons. The varied arrangement of the sentiments in a drama must be like the arrangement of flowers [in a garland]. The permanent Rasa takes the place of the thread [in the garland]. This is the view of those who know the sentiments. 1668-71

May this complete essence extracted out of the ocean of the science of dancing by the scholar Śārṅga-deva be tasted by the intelligent to their hearts' content.

If there is any merit in my work, I need not request you to accept that, O Wise Men. Merit in others, even if it be just an atom, is like a mountain to you. 1673

What matters if this book composed by me is full of defects or is free of defects? My mind is keen on worshipping you, O Good People. Whom does not merit surpass? [True merit is beyond the reach of all, i.e., nobody can expect to reach perfection.] 1674

Is there anything in these three worlds which is incontrovertible to you? Still, O Good People, out of affection for me, please honour my work. 1675

Or, I have only followed the ancient path of the sages, and good people naturally love one who treads along the right path. 1676

What is the use of intellectual wealth for me who am desirous of worshipping good people? The monkey lords, though animals [without any intellect], did please Rāma. 1677

My attempt at composition did not arise out of pride of knowledge; on the other hand, I have prepared this as a provision for the journey to [reach and] live in the minds of the learned. 1678

THUS ENDS THE SEVENTH CHAPTER, ON DANCING, OF THE  
SAMGĪTARATNĀKARA COMPOSED BY ŚRĪ ŚARNGADEVA,  
FREE FROM DOUBT, SON OF SODHALADEVA, WHO  
REJOICES IN FAULTLESS KNOWLEDGE, AND  
WHO IS THE MASTER OF KARANA-S

---



## INDEX

- ABHILĀṢA** (Permanent Mood), 225, 240  
**Abhinaya**, 3, 207  
**Abhitapta** (Glance), 65  
**Ābhugna** (Chest), 42  
**Ācārya**, 198  
**Ācchuritaka**, 23  
     ,, (Aṅgahāra), 131  
**Actor** (Nāṭa), 198  
**Adbhuta** (Glance), 61  
     ,, (Rasa), 222-3  
**Addaskhalitikā** (Deśī Cārī), 154  
**Aḍḍitā** (Cārī), 143  
**Aḍḍita** (Maṇḍala), 177  
**Adhaḥkṣipta** (Toes), 85  
**Adhama** (Intoxication), 67, 228-9  
**Adhastala** (Hands, Positions), 87  
**Adhogata** (Hands, Positions), 87  
**Adhomukha** (Arms), 50  
     ,, (Hands, Positions), 87  
     ,, (Head), 10  
**Adhavadana** (Hands, Positions), 87  
**Ādhūta** (Head), 7-8  
**Adhyardha** (Maṇḍala), 177  
**Adhyardhikā** (Cārī), 141-2  
**Affection** (Rasa), 225  
**Agitation** (Transitory Mood), 237-9  
**Agraga** (Hands, Positions), 87  
     ,, (Feet), 47  
**Agraja** (Saṃdamśa), 24  
**Agratalasaṃcara** (Feet), 46  
**Agratastala** (Hands, Positions), 87  
**Āhārya**, 3  
**Āhvāva** (Hands, Actions), 89  
**Ākampita** (Head), 8  
**Ākekara** (Glance), 66  
**Ākrṣṭa** (Hands, Actions), 89  
**Akṣiptā** (Cārī), 147  
**Ākṣipta** (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 107  
**Ākṣiptaka** (Aṅgahāra), 130  
**Ākṣiptarecita** (Aṅgahāra), 134  
     ,, (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 94  
**Ākuñcita** (Posture), 170-1  
     ,, (Wrists), 57  
**Alaga** (Utplutikaraṇa), 122  
**Alagabhramarī** (Utplutikaraṇa), 125  
**Alagapāṭa** (Gharghara), 195  
**Ālambanavibhāva-s**, 207  
**Alapadmaka** (Nṛtta hands), 38  
**Alapallava** (Single hand), 19  
**Ālasya** (Transitory Mood), 231-2  
**Alātā** (Cārī), 145-6  
     ,, (Deśī Cārī), 156  
**Alāta** (Maṇḍala), 181  
     ,, (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 99  
**Alātaka** (Aṅgahāra), 135  
**Āliḍha** (,,), 131  
     ,, (Posture), 161  
**Ālokita** (Pupils), 73  
**Amarṣa** (Transitory Mood), 232  
**Āmukha** (Style), 173  
**Ānandaja** (Rudita), 215  
**Āñcita** (Arms), 50  
     ,, (Feet), 45  
     ,, (Head), 9  
     ,, (Neck), 49

Añcita (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 96  
 „ (Utplutikaraṇa), 121  
 Añcitabhramarī (Utplutika-  
 karaṇa), 126  
 Āndolita (Arms), 52  
 „ (Breath), 77  
 Āṅghāra (Lāsyāṅga), 183  
 Āṅghāra-s, 127-37  
 Āṅga-s, 5, 7-48  
 Anger, 217-8  
 „ (Permanent Mood), 203  
 Āṅghritāḍitā (Deśi Cāri), 155  
 Āṅgika, 3, 5  
 Āṅgulisāṅgata (Heels), 84  
 Āṅguṣṭhasaṁsliṣṭa (Ankles), 84  
 Āñjali (Combined hands), 25  
 Ankles, 84  
 Āṅkura, 5  
 Antarāлага (Utplutikaraṇa),  
 122  
 Antarbhramarī (Utplutikaraṇa),  
 125  
 Antargata (Heels), 84  
 Antaryāta (Ankles), 84  
 Anubhāva-s, 207  
 Anuvṛtta (Pupils), 72  
 Anxiety (Transitory Mood),  
 229-30  
 Apaḍapa (Gharghara), 195  
 Apahasita, 212-3  
 Apakrāntā (Cāri), 145  
 Apakrānta (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 115  
 Apakṣepā (Deśi Cāri), 155  
 Aparājita (Āṅghāra), 129  
 Apasarpita ( „ „ ), 131-2  
 Apasmāra (Transitory Mood),  
 233  
 Apasṛta (Sides), 43  
 Apavidhha (Āṅghāra), 133  
 „ (Arms), 50  
 „ (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 96  
 Apprehension (Transitory  
 Mood), 226-7  
 Ārabhaṭi-vṛtti (Style), 172  
 Arāla (Single hand), 16-7

Arālakhaṭakāmukha (Nṛtta  
 hands), 30-1  
 Ārātrika (Head), 11  
 Ardhaçandra (Single Hand),  
 15-6  
 Ardhañcita (Knees), 58  
 Ardhamāṇḍalikā (Deśi Cāri),  
 151  
 Ardhamattalli (Nṛtta Karaṇa),  
 101  
 Ardhamukula (Glance), 64  
 Ardhanikuṭṭaka (Āṅghāra),  
 135  
 „ (Nṛtta Karaṇa),  
 98  
 Ardhapurāṭikā (Deśi Cāri), 153  
 Ardharecita (Nṛtta hands), 32  
 „ (Nṛtta Karaṇa),  
 101  
 Ardhasūci (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 113  
 Ardhasvastika (Nṛtta Karaṇa),  
 94-5  
 Ārdratā (Permanent Mood),  
 225  
 Argala (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 107  
 Arms, 49-53  
 Arrogance (Transitory Mood),  
 237  
 Ārtija (Weeping), 215  
 Āskandita (Maṇḍala), 176  
 Āśru (Temperamental State),  
 244  
 Assembly, President of, 200  
 „ Seating of, 200-1  
 Assurance (Transitory Mood),  
 228  
 Astonishment (Permanent  
 Mood), 203  
 Āsuddha (Bibhatsa Rasa), 222  
 Āsūyā (Transitory Mood), 228  
 Āśvakrānta (Posture), 163  
 Ātihasita, 212-3  
 Ātikrāntā (Cāri), 144-5  
 Ātikrānta (Maṇḍala), 178-9  
 „ (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 110

- Atipragalbhā, 185  
 Ātmastha (Hāsyā Rasa), 212  
 Atyantaśuddha (Bibhatsa Rasa), 222  
 Audience, 199  
 Augrya (Transitory Mood), 227-8  
 Autasukya (Transitory Mood), 234  
 Avadhūta (Head), 8  
 Avahittha (Combined hands), 28  
 „ (Posture), 163  
 „ (Transitory Mood), 235  
 Avahitthaka (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 116-7  
 Avakuñcitā (Deśi Cāri), 152  
 Avalagita (Style), 173  
 Avalokita (Pupils), 72  
 Avapāta (Style), 173  
 Āvarta (Maṇḍala), 176  
 „ (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 108  
 Āvartita (Shanks), 55  
 Avaspanditā (Cāri), 143  
 Āvega (Transitory Mood), 237-9  
 Āveṣṭita (Hands, Movements), 88  
 Āviddha (Arms), 51  
 Āviddhā (Cāri), 147  
 Āviddhavaktra (Nṛtta hands), 31  
 Awakening (Transitory Mood), 235  
 Āyata (Lips), 79  
 „ (Posture), 162-3  
 BACK, 53-4  
 Baddhā (Cāri), 143-4  
 Bahirgata (Heels), 84  
 „ (Shanks), 56  
 Bahirmukha (Ankles), 84  
 Bāhyabhramarī (Utplutika-  
 karaṇa), 125  
 Bāhyavastvanukāriṇī, 3  
 Belly, 53-4  
 Bhairavāñcita (Utplutikaraṇa), 121  
 Bhakti (Rasa), 225  
 Bhārata (Nyāya), 174  
 Bhāratī-vṛtti (Style), 172  
 Bhāvāśraya, 196  
 Bhaya (Permanent Mood), 203  
 Bhayānaka (Glance), 60  
 „ (Rasa), 220-1  
 Bhayānvita (Glance), 62  
 Bheda (Hands, Actions), 89  
 Bhinna (Change of Voice), 243  
 Bhramaṇa (Pupils), 71  
 Bhramara (Aṅgahāra), 130  
 „ (Maṇḍala), 175-6  
 „ (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 103  
 „ (Single hand), 22-3  
 Bhramarī (Cāri), 147  
 Bhrāmita (Wrists), 57  
 Bhrānta (Breath), 77  
 Bhrāntapādāñcita (Utpluti-  
 karaṇa), 126-7  
 Bhrukuṭi (Eyebrows), 69  
 Bhugna (Mouth), 83  
 Bhujaṅgāñcita (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 104  
 Bhujaṅgatrasitā (Cāri), 147  
 Bhujaṅgatrāsita (Nṛtta  
 Karaṇa), 99  
 Bhujaṅgatrastarecita (Nṛtta  
 Karaṇa), 104  
 Bhūmilagna (Soles), 85  
 Bibboka, 9  
 Bibhatsa (Glance), 60-1  
 „ (Rasa), 221-2  
 Brāhma (Deśi Posture), 167  
 Breath, 75-7  
 CAKRABHRAMARĪ (Utpluti-  
 karaṇa), 126  
 Cakramaṇḍala (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 108  
 Cakravartanikā (Nṛtta hands), 36



- Cala (Breath), 76  
 „ (Wrists), 57  
 Calana (Pupils), 71  
 Calasamhata (Chin), 82  
 Cāli (Lāsyaṅga), 182  
 Calita (Chin), 82  
 Cālivaḍa (Lāsyaṅga), 182  
 Cāpala (Transitory Mood), 232  
 Cāraṇa, 199  
 Cārī, 138-9  
 Cārī-s, 138-57  
 „ Aerial, 144-8  
 „ Deśī, Aerial, 154-7  
 „ Deśī, Earthly, 149-54  
 „ Earthly, 140-4  
 Cāṣagata (Maṇḍala), 178  
 Cāṣagati (Cārī), 142  
 Catura (Eyebrows), 69  
 „ (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 104  
 „ (Single hand), 20-1  
 Caturaśra (Deśī Posture), 166  
 „ (Nṛtta hands), 29  
 „ (Posture), 160  
 Chatrabhramari (Utplutika-  
 raṇa), 125  
 Cheda (Hands, Actions), 89  
 Cheeks, 73-4  
 Chest, 41-2  
 Chin, 81-3  
 Chinna (Hips), 44  
 „ (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 103  
 „ (Teeth), 79  
 Choṭikā, 24  
 Cintā (Transitory Mood), 229-30  
 Cittavṛttiyarpikā, 3-4  
 Colour, Change of (Tempera-  
 mental State), 243  
 Comic sentiment, 211  
 Consequents, 207  
 Contentment (Transitory  
 Mood), 230  
 Courage, 219  
 Cruelty (Transitory Mood),  
 227-8  
 Cukkita (Teeth), 80  
 DAINYA (Transitory Mood), 228  
 Damari (Deśī Cārī), 155  
 Dambha (Transitory Mood), 240  
 Dānavīra, 220  
 Dance Troupe, 188-9  
 „ „ Merits and  
 Defects, 189  
 Dancer, Decorations of, 187  
 „ Defects of, 186-7  
 „ Merits of, 185-6  
 „ (Nartaka), 198  
 Dancing, Person fit for, 184-5  
 Daṇḍapādā (Cārī), 146  
 „ (Deśī Cārī), 155  
 Daṇḍapāda (Maṇḍala), 179  
 „ (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 113-4  
 Daṇḍapakṣa (Nṛtta hands), 35  
 „ (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 102  
 Daṇḍapraṇāmāñcita (Utpluti-  
 karaṇa), 122  
 Daṇḍarecita (Nṛtta Karaṇa),  
 104  
 Darpasaraṇa (Utplutikaraṇa),  
 123  
 Daṣṭa (Teeth), 80  
 Death (Transitory Mood), 239-40  
 Deliberation (Transitory Mood),  
 234  
 Depression (Transitory Mood),  
 228  
 Desire (Permanent Mood), 225,  
 240  
 Despair (Transitory Mood), 233  
 Detachment (Permanent  
 Mood), 203  
 „ (Transitory Mood),  
 226  
 Determinants, 207  
 Devotion (Rasa), 225  
 Dhairya, 219  
 Dharmavīra, 220  
 Dhasaka (Lāsyaṅga), 183  
 Dhṛti (Transitory Mood), 230  
 Dhūnana (Hands, Actions), 89  
 Dhuta (Head), 7

- Digbhramarī (Utplutikaraṇa), 126  
 Diksvastika (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 95  
 Dina (Glance), 61-2  
 Diplomacy, 219  
 Disgust (Permanent Mood), 203  
 Dissimulation (Transitory Mood), 235  
 Distraction (Transitory Mood), 231  
 Dola (Combined hands), 26  
 Dōlāpādā (Cārī), 146  
 Dōlāpāda (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 109  
 Dreaming (Transitory Mood), 234  
 Dṛpta (Glance), 62  
 Dviśikhara (Nṛtta hands), 39  
 EḍAKĀKRĪDITĀ (Cārī), 142  
 Eḍakākrīḍita (Maṇḍala), 178  
 „ (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 117  
 Ekajānūnata (Deśī Posture), 166  
 Ekapāda „, 165  
 Ekapādaloḥaḍī (Utplutikaraṇa), 123  
 Ekapādāñcita (Utplutikaraṇa), 121  
 Ekapārsvagata (Deśī Posture), 166  
 Ekocca (Shoulders), 47  
 Eṇapluta (Utplutikaraṇa), 124  
 Energy (Permanent Mood), 203  
 Envy (Transitory Mood), 228  
 Erotic sentiment, 206-11  
 Excessive Laughter, 212-3  
 Eyebrows, 67-9  
 Eyelids, 69-70  
 FACIAL Colour, 86-7  
 Faith (Permanent Mood), 225  
 Fame, 219  
 Fear (Permanent Mood), 203  
 Fearful sentiment, 220-1  
 Feet, 44-7  
 Fingers, 84  
 Fright (Transitory Mood), 240  
 Furious sentiment, 216-8  
 GADGADA (Change of Voice), 243  
 Gajadanta (Combined hands), 27-8  
 Gajavikīḍita (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 111  
 Gaṇḍasūci (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 111  
 Gaṅgāvatarāṇa (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 120  
 Gāruḍa (Deśī Posture), 168  
 Garuḍapakṣaka (Nṛtta hands), 35  
 Garuḍapluta (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 111-2  
 Garva, 9  
 „ (Transitory Mood), 237  
 Gatāgata (Posture), 164  
 Gatimaṇḍala (Aṅgahāra), 133  
 Gauṇḍali, 191  
 Gauṇḍali-vidhi, 191-4  
 Gentle Laugh, 212-3  
 „ Smile, 212-3  
 Gharghara, 195  
 Ghaṭitotsedha (Feet), 46  
 Ghaṭṭita (Feet), 46  
 Ghūrṇita (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 100  
 Gīta, 197  
 Glāna (Glance), 64  
 Glances, 58-67  
 „ expressing Permanent Moods, 61-2  
 „ „ Rasa, 59-61  
 „ „ Transitory Moods, 63-7  
 Glāni (Transitory Mood), 226  
 Grahaṇa (Teeth), 80  
 Gr̥dhrāvalinaka (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 112  
 Guṇa-s, Six, 219  
 HAṂSA PAKṢA (Single hand), 22  
 Hainsāśya ( „ „ ), 21-2

Hand Poses, Combined, 12, 25-9  
 „ Nṛtta, 12, 29-40  
 „ Single, 11, 14-24

Hands, 11-41

„ Actions, 88-9  
 „ Movements, 88  
 „ Places, 89  
 „ Positions, 87

Harinaplutā (Deśi Cārī), 155

Harinapluta (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 113

Harinatrāsikā (Deśi Cārī), 151

Harṣa (Transitory Mood), 232

Hāsa (Permanent Mood), 203

Hasita, 212-3

Hāsyā (Glance), 59

„ (Rasa), 211

Head, 7-11

Heels, 84

Heroic sentiment, 218

Heroism in Charity, Virtue, and War, 219

Hips, 43-4

Horripilation (Temperamental State), 243

Hṛṣṭa (Glance), 61

Hunger (Transitory Mood), 241

IMPATIENCE (Transitory Mood), 234

Inconstancy (Transitory Mood), 232

Indignation (Transitory Mood), 232

Indolence (Transitory Mood), 231-2

Indrajāla, 223

Insanity (Transitory Mood), 236-7

Intoxication (Transitory Mood), 228-9

Īṣyākṛta (Weeping), 215

JADATĀ (Transitory Mood), 233-4

Jalaśayana (Utplutikaraṇa), 123

Jaṅghālaṅghanikā (Deśi Cārī), 156

Jaṅghāvartā (Deśi Cārī), 156

Janitā (Cārī), 144

Janita (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 117

Jānugata (Posture), 170

Jihma (Glance), 64

Joy (Transitory Mood), 232

Jugupsā (Permanent Mood), 203

Jugupsita (Glance), 62

KAIŚIKA (Nyāya), 174

Kaiśiki-vṛtti, 172

Kakṣavartanikā (Nṛtta hands), 36

Kalāpa, 127

Kampita (Breath), 77

(Cheeks), 73

(Head), 8

(Hips), 44

(Lips), 78

(Shanks), 56

(Thighs), 54

Kāṅgūla (Single hand), 19

Kaniṣṭha (Troupe), 189

Kānta (Glance), 59

Kapālacūrṇana (Utplutikaraṇa), 123

Kapittha (Single hand), 18

Kapota (Combined hands), 25

Karaṇa (Cārī), 139

Karasparśana (Utplutikaraṇa), 124

Kariḥastā (Deśi Cārī), 149

Kariḥasta (Nṛtta hands), 34

„ (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 114-5

Karkṣṭa (Combined hands), 25-6

Karṇalagna (Shoulders), 47

Kartarilohaḍi (Utplutikaraṇa), 123

Kartarimukha (Single hand), 16

Kartaryañcita (Utplutikaraṇa), 122

Karuṇa (Glance), 60  
 „ (Rasa), 213-6  
 Kaṭākṣa (Glance), 59  
 Kātarā (Deśi Cāri), 150  
 Kathodghāta (Style), 173  
 Kaṭibhrānta (Nṛtta Karaṇa),  
 104-5  
 Kaṭichinna ( „ ), 98  
 Kaṭisama ( „ ), 98  
 Kavicāra, 196  
 Keśabandha (Nṛtta hands), 33  
 Khalla (Belly), 53  
 Khaluhula (Gharghara), 196  
 Khaṇḍa (Cāri), 139  
 Khaṇḍaka, 127  
 Khaṇḍana (Teeth), 79  
 Khaṇḍasūci (Deśi Posture), 167  
 Khaṭakāmukha (Single hand),  
 18  
 Khaṭakāvardhamānaka (Com-  
 bined hands), 27  
 Khuttā (Deśi Cāri), 153  
 Kilakiñcita, 9  
 Kirti, 219  
 Knees, 57-8  
 Kohlāṭika, 199  
 Krānta (Maṇḍala), 179  
 „ (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 105  
 „ (Posture), 169  
 Krodha (Permanent Mood), 203  
 Kṛtrima (Bhayānaka Rasa), 221  
 Kruddha (Glance), 62  
 Kṣāma (Belly), 53  
 „ (Cheeks), 74  
 Kṣepa (Hands, Actions), 89  
 Kṣipta (Shanks), 55  
 Kukkuṭāsana, 122  
 Kulirikā (Deśi Cāri), 150  
 Kuñcanmadhya (Soles), 85  
 Kuñcanmūla (Fingers), 84  
 Kuñcita (Arms), 51  
 „ (Cheeks), 73  
 „ (Eyebrows), 67  
 „ (Eyelids), 69  
 „ (Feet), 45

Kuñcita (Glance), 65  
 „ (Knees), 57  
 „ (Neck), 49  
 „ (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 109  
 „ (Toes), 85  
 Kūrmaka (Combined hands), 25  
 Kūrmāḷaga (Utplutikaraṇa),  
 122  
 Kūrmāsana (Deśi Posture), 168  
 Kuṣṭha (Troupe), 189  
 Kuṭṭamita, 9  
 Kuṭṭana (Teeth), 79  
 LADHI (Lāsyāṅga), 182  
 Laghu (Nṛtta), 4  
 Lajjita (Glance), 63  
 Lalāṭatilaka (Nṛtta Karaṇa),  
 107-8  
 Lalita, 9  
 „ (Glance), 65  
 „ (Maṇḍala), 181  
 „ (Nṛtta hands), 38  
 „ (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 102  
 Lalitasamcara (Maṇḍala), 179-  
 80  
 Lamentation, 215  
 Laṅghitajaṅghikā (Deśi Cāri),  
 152  
 Lāsyā, 4  
 Lāsyāṅga-s, Deśi, 182-3  
 Latākara (Nṛtta hands), 33  
 Latākṣepā (Deśi Cāri), 154  
 Latāvṛścika (Nṛtta Karaṇa),  
 106-7  
 Laughter, 212-3  
 „ (Permanent Mood),  
 203  
 Lāulya (Rasa), 209  
 Lehini (Tongue), 81  
 Līna (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 92  
 Lips, 77-9  
 Lohadī (Utplutikaraṇa), 122-3  
 Loka-dharmī, 3-4  
 Lola (Chin), 83  
 „ (Tongue), 81

Lolita (Head), 10  
 „ (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 118  
 „ (Shoulders), 48  
 Love (Permanent Mood), 203  
 Luṭhita (Utplutikaraṇa), 123  
  
 MADA (Transitory Mood), 228-9  
 Madālasā (Deśi Cāri), 151  
 Madālasa (Posture), 169  
 Madaskhalita (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 118  
 Madavilasita (Aṅgahāra), 131  
 Madhyā, 185  
 Madhya(ma) (Intoxication), 67, 228-9  
 Madhyama (Troupe), 189  
 Madira (Glance), 67  
 Makara (Combined hands), 28  
 Malina (Glance), 63  
 Māna, 9  
 Mana (Lāsyāṅga), 183  
 Manda (Nose), 75  
 Maṇḍala (Cāri), 139  
 „ (Posture), 161  
 Maṇḍalagati (Arms), 50  
 Maṇḍala-s, 175-81  
 „ Aerial, 178-81  
 „ Earthly, 175-8  
 Maṇḍalasvastika (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 93-4  
 Marālā (Deśi Cāri), 149  
 Maraṇa (Transitory Mood), 239-40  
 Mardita (Feet), 46  
 Mārga, 4  
 Marvellous sentiment, 222-3  
 Mati (Transitory Mood), 235  
 Māṭṛkā, 127  
 Matsyakaraṇa (Utplutikaraṇa), 124  
 Mattākṛīḍa (Aṅgahāra), 132  
 Mattalli (Cāri), 142-3  
 Mattalli (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 101  
 Mattaskhalita (Aṅgahāra), 133  
 Māyā, 223

Mayūralalita (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 114  
 Might, 219  
 Mithoyukta (Ankles), 84  
 „ (Heels), 84  
 Modesty, 219  
 Moha (Transitory Mood), 231  
 Mokṣaṇa (Hands, Actions), 89  
 Moṭana (Hands, Actions), 89  
 Moṭita (Posture), 164  
 Moṭṭāyita, 9  
 Mouth, 83-4  
 Mrgaplutā (Cāri), 145  
 Mrgaśirṣa (Single hand), 21  
 Mugdhā, 185  
 Mūkagaṇḍalī, 191  
 Mukhaja (Saṁdamśa), 24  
 Mukta-jānu (Posture), 170  
 Mukula (Glance), 64  
 „ (Single hand), 23  
 Muṣṭi (Single hand), 17  
 Muṣṭikasvastika (Nṛtta hands), 37  
  
 NĀGABANDHA (Deśi Posture), 168  
 „ (Utplutikaraṇa), 123  
 Nāgāpasarpita (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 120  
 Nalinīpadmakōśa (Nṛtta hands), 37-8  
 Namra (Arms), 51  
 Nandīāvarta (Deśi Posture), 165  
 Narma (Style), 173  
 Narmagarbha (Style), 173  
 Narmasphuṭa ( „ ), 173  
 Narmasphuṇja ( „ ), 173  
 Nartaka, 198  
 Naṭa, 198  
 Nata (Knees), 58  
 „ (Neck), 49  
 „ (Nose), 74  
 „ (Posture), 171

Nata (Shanks), 55  
 „ (Sides), 43  
 Nataprṣṭha (Utlutikaraṇa),  
 124  
 Nāṭya, 3  
 Nāṭya-dharmī, 3-4  
 Naya, 219  
 Neck, 48-9  
 Nepathya, 211  
 Nidrā (Transitory Mood), 240  
 Nigraha (Hands, Actions), 89  
 Nihañcita (Head), 9  
 Niḥṣṛta (Shanks), 55  
 Niḥśvāsa (Breath), 77  
 Nikuñca (Wrists), 56  
 Nikuñcaka (Nṛtta hands), 39  
 Nikuñcita (Eyebrows), 68  
 „ (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 100  
 Nikuṭṭaka (Aṅgahāra), 136  
 „ (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 97  
 Nikuṭṭikā (Deśī Cārī), 154  
 Nikuṭṭita (Aṅgahāra), 136  
 Nimeṣita (Eyelids), 69  
 Nirasta (Breath), 76  
 Nirbhugna (Chest), 42  
 Nirvarṇanā, 72  
 Nirveda (Permanent Mood),  
 203  
 „ (Transitory Mood),  
 226  
 Niṣadha (Combined hands), 28  
 Niṣaṇṇa, 159  
 Niṣkarṣaṇa (Teeth), 80  
 Niṣkrāma (Pupils), 71  
 Niśumbhita (Nṛtta Karaṇa),  
 110  
 Nitamba (Nṛtta hands), 32  
 „ (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 115  
 Nivartita (Thighs), 54  
 Niveśa (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 117  
 Nivṛtta (Neck), 48  
 Nose, 74-5  
 Nṛtta, 4  
 „ (Aṅgikābhinaya), 5  
 „ hand poses, 29-41

Nṛtta Karaṇa-s, 90-120  
 Nṛtya, 4  
 Nūpura (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 103  
 Nūpurapādikā (Cārī), 146  
 Nūpuraviddhā (Deśī Cārī), 149  
 Nyāya-s, 173-4  
  
 ODIUS sentiment, 221-2  
 Ornaments, 58  
 Oṃāraka (Lāsyāṅga), 183  
  
 PĀDĀPAVIDDHAKA, (Nṛtta  
 Karaṇa), 102-3  
 Paḍivāta (Gharghara), 195  
 Padmakōśa (Single hand), 19  
 Pakṣapradhyotaka (Nṛtta hands),  
 35  
 Pakṣasthita, 159  
 Pakṣavañcita (Nṛtta hands), 35  
 Pallava (Nṛtta hands), 32-3  
 Paracittāksepaka (Style), 173  
 Parāñmukha (Hands, Positions),  
 87  
 Parasamsthā (Hāsya Rasa),  
 212  
 Parāvṛtta (Aṅgahāra), 135-6  
 „ (Deśī Posture), 166  
 „ (Head), 9-10  
 „ (Shanks), 56  
 Parāvṛttatalā (Deśī Cārī), 149  
 Paricchinna (Aṅgahāra), 130  
 Paridevana, 215  
 Parigraha (Hands, Actions), 89  
 Parivāhita (Head), 8-9  
 Parivartaka (Style), 173  
 Parivartita (Hands, Move-  
 ments), 88  
 „ (Shanks), 55  
 Parivṛtta (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 113  
 Parivṛttarecita (Aṅgahāra), 136  
 Paropālambhaka (Style), 173  
 Pārṣṇiga (Feet), 47  
 Pārṣṇipārśvagata (Deśī Posture),  
 166  
 Pārṣṇirecitā (Deśī Cārī), 150

- Pārṣṇividdha (Deśi Posture), 166  
 Pārsvābhimukha (Head), 11  
 Pārśvaccheda (Aṅgahāra), 131  
 Pārśvadaṇḍapādā (Cāri), 145  
 Pārśvaga (Feet), 47  
 Pārśvagata (Hands, Positions), 87  
 Pārśvaja (Single hand), 24  
 Pārśvajānu (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 112  
 Pārśvakrāntā (Cāri), 145  
 Pārśvakrānta (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 110  
 Pārśvamaṇḍalin (Nṛtta hands), 36  
 Pārśvanikuṭṭaka (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 108  
 Pārśvasvastika (Aṅgahāra), 130  
 Pārśvatomukha (Hands, Positions), 87  
 Paryastaka (Aṅgahāra), 129  
 Passion (Rasa), 225  
 Pāta (Pupils), 71  
 Patāka (Single hand), 14  
 Pathetic sentiment, 213-6  
 Patita (Eyebrows), 68  
 „ (Fingers), 84  
 „ (Heels), 84  
 Patitāgra (Soles), 85  
 Perañin, 194-7  
 Perañi-paddhati 197-8  
 Permanent Moods, 203  
 Perspiration (Temperamental State), 242  
 Phulla (Cheeks), 74  
 Pihita (Eyelids), 70  
 Piṣṭakuṭṭa (Maṇḍala), 178  
 Policies, 219  
 Possession (Transitory Mood), 233  
 Postures, Deśi, 164-8  
 „ Men, 159-62  
 „ Reclining, 170-1  
 „ Sitting, 168-170  
 Postures, (Sthāna-s), 157-71  
 „ Women, 162-4  
 Practice, Procedure for, 184  
 Pragalbhā, 185  
 Prahāsana (Style), 173  
 Prakampita (Chest), 42  
 Prākṛta (Pupils), 71  
 Pralaya (Temperamental State), 244  
 Prarocanā (Style), 173  
 Prasanna (Facial Colour), 86  
 Prasārita (Arms), 339  
 „ (Posture), 171  
 „ (Sides), 43  
 „ (Toes), 85  
 Prasarpita (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 115  
 Prasṛta (Breath), 77  
 „ (Eyelids), 69  
 „ (Fingers), 84  
 Pratāpa, 219  
 Pratyālīḍha (Posture), 162  
 Pratyāṅga-s, 5-6, 48-58  
 Pravartaka (Style), 173  
 Praveśana (Pupils), 71  
 Pravicaṛa-s, 174  
 Pravilokita (Pupils), 73  
 Pravṛddha (Breath), 76  
 Prāvṛta (Deśi Cāri), 157  
 Prayogātisāya (Style), 173  
 Preṅkholita (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 114  
 Pride (Transitory Mood), 240  
 Pṛsthānusārin (Arms), 51  
 Pṛsthāsvastika (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 95  
 Pṛsthokṣepa (Deśi Cāri), 157  
 Pṛsthottānātala (Deśi Posture), 165-6  
 Pupils, 70-3  
 Purāhṭṣepā (Deśi Cāri), 154  
 Purāṭhikā ( „ ), 153  
 Pūrṇa (Belly), 53  
 „ (Cheeks), 74  
 Puṣpapuṣṭa (Combined hands), 26

- RAKṢAṆA (Hands, Actions), 89  
 Rakta (Facial Colour), 86  
 Rasa, 202  
 Rathacakrā (Deśi Cāri), 149  
 Rati (Permanent Mood), 203  
 Raudra (Glance), 60  
 „ (Rasa), 216-8  
 Recakanikuṭṭaka (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 102  
 Recaka-s, 138  
 Recita (Aṅgahāra), 134-5  
 „ (Eyebrows), 68  
 „ (Hips), 44  
 „ (Lips), 79  
 „ (Neck), 49  
 „ (Nṛtta hands), 32  
 Recollection (Transitory Mood), 230  
 Rekhā, 183  
 Ridicule, 212-3  
 Rikṭapūrṇa (Belly), 54  
 Rjvi (Tongue), 80  
 Romāñca (Temperamental State), 243  
 Roṣersyāsūcaka (Style), 173  
  
 SĀCI (Pupils), 72  
 Sahaja (Eyebrows), 68  
 Śaiva (Deśi Posture), 168  
 Śakaṭāsyā (Cāri), 141  
 Śakaṭāsyā (Maṇḍala), 176  
 „ (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 119  
 Śākhā, 5  
 Sama (Breath), 77  
 „ (Cheeks), 74  
 „ (Chest), 41-2  
 „ (Eyelids), 70  
 „ (Feet), 45  
 „ (Head), 11  
 „ (Knees), 58  
 „ (Neck), 48  
 „ (Posture), 170  
 „ (Pupils), 72  
 „ (Teeth), 80  
 „ (Wrists), 57  
  
 Samanakha (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 96  
 Samapādā (Cāri), 140-1  
 Samapāda (Deśi Posture), 165  
 „ (Posture), 160  
 Samapādāñcita (Utpluti-karaṇa), 126  
 Samaskhalitikā (Deśi Cāri), 154  
 Samasūci (Deśi Posture), 167  
 Sambhoga (Śrṅgara), 206-8  
 Sambhrānta (Aṅgahāra), 137  
 „ (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 119  
 Saṃcāritā (Deśi Cāri), 151-2  
 Saṃdaṃśa (Single hand), 23  
 Saṃdaṣṭaka (Lips), 78  
 Saṃghāṭaka (Style), 173  
 Saṃhata (Chin), 82  
 „ (Deśi Posture), 165  
 „ (Knees), 57  
 Saṃkṣiptaka (Style), 173  
 Saṃlagna (Toes), 85  
 Saṃlāpaka (Style), 173  
 Sammukhāgata (Hands, Positions), 87  
 Samotsarita (Maṇḍala), 177  
 Samotsaritamattali (Cāri), 142  
 Sampheta (Style), 173  
 Sampradāya, 188-9  
 Samudga (Lips), 78  
 Samudvṛtta (Pupils), 71  
 Saṃyuta (Fingers), 84  
 Saṅghāta, 127  
 Saṅghaṭṭitā (Deśi Cāri), 152  
 Śāṅkā (Transitory Mood), 226-7  
 Śāṅkita (Glance), 64  
 Sanna, 159  
 Sannata (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 114  
 Śānta (Rasa), 203, 223-5  
 Sarala (Arms), 52  
 Sarikā (Deśi Cāri), 153  
 Sarpasīras (Single hand), 20  
 Sarpita (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 114  
 Sāttvata (Nyāya), 174  
 Sāttvati-vṛtti (Style), 172  
 Sāttvika, 3  
 Sāttvikabhāva-s, 241-4



Śaurya, 219  
 Sauṣṭhava, 159  
 Sentiments, Nine, 202-25  
 Shame (Transitory Mood), 231  
 Shanks, 55-6  
 Shoulders, 47-8  
 Sickness (Transitory Mood), 236  
 Sides, 43  
 Sikhara (Single hand), 17  
 Sirihira (Gharghara), 196  
 Siripāṭa ( ), 195  
 Śirobhramarī (Utplutikaraṇa), 126  
 Sitkṛta (Breath), 77  
 Skandhabhṛānta (Utplutikaraṇa), 127  
 Skandhānata (Head), 10  
 Skhalita (Breath), 77  
 „ (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 115-6  
 Simhākarsita (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 116  
 Simhavikṛdita ( „ ), 116  
 Sleep (Transitory Mood), 240  
 Śleṣa (Hands, Actions), 89  
 Smita, 212-3  
 Smṛti (Transitory Mood), 230  
 Sneha (Rasa), 225  
 Snigdha (Glance), 61  
 Socchvāsa (Nose), 75  
 Śoka (Permanent Mood), 203  
 Soles, 85  
 Sorrow (Permanent Mood), 203  
 Spanditā (Cārī), 143  
 Sparśagraha, 223  
 Sphoṭana (Hands, Actions), 89  
 Sphurikā (Deśī Cārī), 153  
 Sphurita (Chin), 82  
 Sphuritā (Deśī Cārī), 152  
 Sphurita (Eyelids), 70  
 Śraddhā (Permanent Mood), 209  
 Śrama (Transitory Mood), 229  
 Śrānta (Glance), 63  
 Srasta (Shoulders), 48  
 Srastālāsa (Posture), 169-70

Sṛṅkānuga (Tongue), 81  
 Sṛṅgāra (Rasa), 206-11  
 Stabdha (Thighs), 54  
 Stambha, 9  
 „ (Temperamental State), 242  
 Stambhakṛīḍanikā (Deśī Cārī), 152  
 Stambhita (Breath), 77  
 Steadiness, 219  
 Sthairya, 219  
 Sthāna (Posture), 158  
 Sthirahasta (Aṅgahāra), 128-9  
 Sthitāvartā (Cārī), 141  
 Stupefaction (Temperamental State), 242  
 Stupor (Transitory Mood), 233-4  
 Style, Pure, 190-1  
 „ (Vṛtti), 171-3  
 Sūci, 5  
 „ (Cārī), 146  
 „ (Deśī Cārī), 157  
 „ (Feet), 45  
 Sūci (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 112-3  
 Sūcimukha (Nṛtta hands), 31-2  
 „ (Single hand), 20  
 Sūcividdha (Aṅgahāra), 129  
 „ (Maṇḍala), 180  
 „ (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 113  
 Sūcyanta-s (Utplutikaraṇa-s), 125  
 Sūcyāsa (Nṛtta hands), 32  
 Śuddha (Bibhatsa Rasa), 222  
 Śuddha-paddhati, 190-1  
 Sūka (Lāsyāṅga), 182  
 Śukatuṇḍa (Single hand), 18  
 Śūnya (Glance), 63  
 Supta (Transitory Mood), 234  
 Sūtkṛta (Breath), 77  
 Svābhāvika (Facial Colour), 86  
 Svābhāviki (Nose), 74  
 Svahetūttha (Bhayānaka Rasa), 221  
 Svarabheda (Temperamental State), 243

- Svasammukhatala (Hands, Positions), 87  
 Śvasita (Chin), 82  
 Svastha (Breath), 75  
 „ (Posture), 168  
 Svastika (Arms), 51  
 „ (Combined hands), 26  
 Svastikā (Deśi Cāri), 153  
 Svastika (Deśi Posture), 164  
 „ (Nṛtta hands), 30  
 „ (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 95-6  
 Svastikarecita (Aṅgahāra), 137  
 „ (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 97  
 Sveda (Temperamental State), 242  
 Śyāma (Facial Colour), 86  
  
 TĀḌANA (Hands, Actions), 89  
 Tāḍita (Feet), 46  
 Tāla, 159  
 Taladarśini (Deśi Cāri), 153  
 Talamukha (Nṛtta hands), 30  
 Talapuṣpapaṭa (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 92  
 Talasaṃsphoṭita (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 112  
 Talasaṅghaṭṭita (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 117-8  
 Talavilāsita (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 107  
 Talodvṛttā (Deśi Cāri), 151  
 Tāmracūḍa (Single hand), 24  
 Tāṇḍava, 4  
 Tārjana (Hands, Actions), 89  
 Taruṇa (Intoxication), 67, 228-9  
 Teacher, 187-8  
 Tears (Temperamental State), 244  
 Teeth, 79-80  
 Temperamental States, 241-4  
 Tenderness (Permanent Mood), 225  
 Thighs, 54  
 Thirst (Transitory Mood), 241  
 Tiraścīna (Shanks), 56  
 „ (Soles), 85  
 Tiripabhramari (Utplutikaraṇa), 125  
 Tiryagañcita (Utplutikaraṇa), 124  
 Tiryak (Arms), 50  
 Tiryakkaraṇa (Utplutikaraṇa), 124  
 Tiryakkuñcitā (Deśi Cāri), 151  
 Tiryaksvastika (Utplutikaraṇa), 125  
 Tiryānmukhā (Deśi Cāri), 149  
 Tiryānnatonnata (Head), 10  
 Toes, 84-5  
 Tolana (Hands, Actions), 89  
 Tongue, 80-1  
 Tranquil sentiment, 203, 223-5  
 Tranquillity (Transitory Mood), 241  
 Transitory Moods, 226-41  
 Trāsa (Transitory Mood), 240  
 Trasta (Glance), 66  
 Trembling (Temperamental State), 243  
 Tripatāka (Single hand), 14-5  
 Tryaśra, 159  
 „ (Neck), 19  
  
 UCCHṚITA (Shoulders), 47  
 Ucchvāsa (Breath), 77  
 Uddhṛta (Soles), 85  
 Uddhṛtāgra (Soles), 85  
 Udghaṭṭita (Aṅgahāra), 134  
 „ (Feet), 46  
 „ (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 119  
 Udghātyaka (Style), 173  
 Udvāhi (Mouth), 83  
 Udvāhita (Chest), 42  
 „ (Head), 8  
 „ (Hips), 44  
 „ (Posture), 171  
 „ (Shanks), 55  
 Udvartita (Thighs), 54

- Udvega (Transitory Mood), 241  
 Udveṣṭana (Deśi Cāri), 156  
 Udveṣṭita (Arms), 51  
     ,, (Hands, Movements), 88  
 Udvṛttā (Cāri), 148  
 Udvṛtta (Lips), 78  
     ,, (Nṛtta hands), 29  
     ,, (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 118  
 Udvṛttaka (Aṅgahāra), 136  
 Ūhāpoha, 235  
 Ulbaṇa (Nṛtta hands), 38  
 Ullāsita (Breath), 76  
 Ullokita (Pupils), 73  
 Ullola (Deśi Cāri), 157  
 Ullukasana, 223  
 Unconsciousness (Temperamental State), 244  
 Unmāda (Transitory Mood), 236-7  
 Unmatta (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 96-7  
 Unmeṣita (Eyelids), 69  
 Unnata (Knees), 58  
     ,, (Neck), 49  
     ,, (Sides), 43  
     ,, (Tongue), 81  
 Upahasita, 212-3  
 Upāṅga-s, 6, 58-87  
 Upasṛta (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 117  
 Upāya-s, 219  
 Urahpārsvamaṇḍalin (Nṛtta hands), 37  
 Ūrdhvaga (Hands, Positions), 87  
 Ūrdhvajānu (Cāri), 145  
     ,, (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 100  
 Ūrdhvālaga (Utplutikaraṇa), 122  
 Ūrdhvaṇḍalin (Nṛtta hands), 36  
 Ūrdhvamukha (Hands, Positions), 87  
 Ūrdhvastha (Arms), 50  
 Ūrṇanābha (Single hand), 23  
 Uromaṇḍala (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 108  
 Uromaṇḍalin (Nṛtta hands), 36-7  
 Uroṅgaṇa (Lāsyāṅga), 182  
 Urovartanikā (Nṛtta hands), 36  
 Ūrūdvṛttā (Cāri), 144  
 Ūrūdvṛtta (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 120  
 Ūrutādītā (Deśi Cāri), 150  
 Ūruveṇi (    ,,    ), 150  
 Utkāṣa (Posture), 169  
 Utkṛṣṭa (Hands, Actions), 89  
 Utkṣepa (Deśi Cāri), 156  
 Utkṣipta (Eyebrows), 68  
     ,, (Head), 10  
     ,, (Heels), 84  
     ,, (Toes), 85  
 Utkṣipta-patita (Heels), 84  
 Utkuñcitā (Deśi Cāri), 152  
 Utplutikaraṇa-s, 121-7  
 Utsāha (Permanent Mood), 203  
 Utsaṅga (Combined hands), 27  
 Utsārita (Arms), 52  
 Utsanditā (Cāri), 143  
 Uttāna (Hands, Positions), 87  
 Uttānavañcita (Nṛtta hands), 33  
 Utthāpaka (Style), 173  
 VĀCIKA, 3  
 Vaiśākha (Posture), 160-1  
 Vaiśākharecita (Aṅgahāra), 129-30  
     ,, (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 105-6  
 Vaiṣṇava (Deśi Posture), 167  
     ,, (Posture), 159  
 Vaitālika 198-9  
 Vaivarṇya (Temperamental State), 243  
 Vakra (Chin), 82  
     ,, (Fingers), 84  
     ,, (Tongue), 81  
 Vakṣaḥvastika (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 94  
 Valana (Deśi Cāri), 156

- Valana (Pupils), 71  
 Valita (Fingers), 84  
     (Neck), 48  
     (Nṛtta hands), 39  
     (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 102  
     (Posture), 164  
     (Thighs), 54  
 Valitoru (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 93  
 Valour, 219  
 Vāmaviddha (Maṇḍala), 180  
 Vaṅkola (Utplutikaraṇa), 124  
 Varadābhaya (Nṛtta hands), 40  
 Vardhamāna (Combined  
     hands), 29  
     ,, (Deśī Posture),  
         165  
 Vārṣaganya (Nyāya), 174  
 Vartanā, 52  
 Vartita (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 93  
 Vastūthāpana (Style), 173  
 Vepathu (Temperamental  
     State), 243  
 Veṣṭana (Deśī Cārī), 156  
 Vibhāva-s, 207  
 Vibhrama, 237  
 Vibhrānta (Glance), 66  
 Vibodha (Transitory Mood)  
     235-6  
 Vičālita (Eyelids), 70  
 Vicitra (Maṇḍala), 180  
 Vicyavā (Cārī), 141  
 Viddhā (Deśī Cārī), 157  
 Vidhuta (Head), 7  
     ,, (Mouth), 83  
 Vidyudbhrānta (Āṅgahāra),  
     132  
 Vidyudbhrāntā (Cārī), 146  
     ,, (Deśī Cārī), 154  
 Vidyudbhrānta (Nṛtta Karaṇa),  
     110  
 Vihasī (Lāsyāṅga), 183  
 Vihasita, 212-3  
 Vihṛta (Glance), 63  
     ,, (Maṇḍala), 181  
 Vikāsin (Lips), 79  
 Vikāṭa (Nṛtta), 4-5  
 Vikoṣa (Glance), 66  
 Vikṛṣṭa (Hands, Actions), 89  
     ,, (Nose), 75  
 Vikṣepā (Deśī Cārī), 155  
 Vikṣipta (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 110-1  
 Vikṣiptākṣiptaka (Nṛtta  
     Karaṇa), 99  
 Vikūṇṭha (Nose), 75  
 Vilāpa, 215  
 Vilāsa, 9  
 Vilina (Breath), 77  
 Vilokita (Pupils), 72  
 Vimukta (Breath), 76  
     ,, (Posture), 170  
 Vinaya, 219  
 Vinigūhita (Lips), 78  
 Vinivartita (Posture), 164  
 Vinivṛtta (Mouth), 84  
     ,, (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 109  
 Vipluta (Glance), 66  
 Viprakirṇa (Nṛtta hands), 30  
 Vipralambha (Śṛṅgāra), 206-8  
 Vīra (Glance), 60  
     ,, (Rasa), 218  
 Viśāda (Transitory Mood), 233  
 Viśama 196  
 Viśama (Nṛtta), 111  
 Viśamasuci (Deśī Posture), 167  
 Viśaṇṇa (Glance), 65  
 Viśarjana (Hands, Actions), 89  
 Viṣkambha (Āṅgahāra), 133  
     ,, (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 119  
 Viṣkambhāpasṛta (Āṅgahāra),  
     132-3  
 Viṣkambhita (Posture), 169  
 Viśleṣa (Hands, Actions), 89  
 Viśliṣṭā (Deśī Cārī), 150  
 Vismaya (Permanent Mood),  
     203  
 Vismita (Breath), 76  
     ,, (Glance), 62  
 Viṣṇukrānta (Nṛtta Karaṇa),  
     118  
 Viśṛṣṭa (Lips), 78

- Visvara (Change of Voice), 243  
 Vitāḍita (Eyelids), 69  
 Vitarka (Transitory Mood), 234  
 Vitarkita (Glance), 65  
 Vithī (Style), 173  
 Vitrāsitaka (Bhayānaka Rasa), 221  
 Vivartana (Pupils), 71  
 Vivartita (Eyelids), 69  
 „ (Lips), 78  
 „ (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 111  
 „ (Posture), 171  
 „ (Sides), 43  
 Vivṛta (Knees), 58  
 „ (Mouth), 83  
 Vivṛtta (Hips), 44  
 „ (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 109  
 Viyukta (Ankles), 84  
 „ (Heels), 84  
 Viyuta (Fingers), 84  
 Voice, Change of (Temperamental State), 243  
 Vṛiḍā (Transitory Mood), 231  
 Vṛṣabhakṛiḍita (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 120  
 Vṛṣabhāsana (Deśi Posture), 168  
 Vṛścika (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 106  
 Vṛścikakuṭṭita (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 106  
 Vṛścikanikuṭṭaka (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 106  
 Vṛścikāpasṛta (Aṅgahāra), 135  
 Vṛścikarecita (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 106  
 Vṛtti, 171  
 Vulgar Laughter, 212-3  
 Vyabhicāribhāva-s, 226-41  
 Vyābhugna (Mouth), 83  
 Vyādhi (Transitory Mood), 236  
 Vyādirṇa (Chin), 82  
 Vyamsita (Nṛtta Karaṇa), 105  
 Vyāvartita (Hands, Movements), 88  
 Vyāyāma (Cāri), 139  
 WEAKNESS (Transitory Mood), 226  
 Weapons, Ways of using (Nyāya-s), 173-4  
 Weariness (Transitory Mood), 229  
 Weeping, 215  
 Wrists, 56-7  
 YUDDHAVĪRA, 220